BLI 223

Organizing and Managing Information

MCQ SERIES

ALL UNIT

SAKET SHARMA

Q1. Why is classification considered a mental act and logical process of association and relation?

A. It allows for the storage of large amounts of information.

B. It enables systems to function successfully by organizing and relating items.

C. It simplifies the learning process for individuals.

D. It ensures that all human activities are aligned and systematic.

Answer: B. It enables systems to function successfully by organizing and relating items.

Explanation: Classification is fundamental because it involves organizing and associating items in a logical manner, which is essential for the efficient functioning of biological, social, and mechanical systems. By categorizing items, individuals and systems can manage and use resources more effectively, as illustrated by the examples of the postman, the fruit seller, and the office records.

Q2. How does classification add value to items?

A. By reducing the number of items.

B. By making items more attractive.

C. By organizing items in a manner that increases their usability.

D. By improving the durability of items.

Answer: C. By organizing items in a manner that increases their usability.

Explanation: Classification adds value by sorting and organizing items into categories, making them easier to locate and use efficiently. This process is highlighted in examples such as the postman sorting mail and the fruit seller categorizing fruits, which enhances the overall efficiency and usability of the items.

Q3. Why is it necessary for record files in an office to be arranged in some order?

A. To prevent unauthorized access.

B. To ensure the safety of the documents.

C. To facilitate easy and quick retrieval of previous records.

D. To improve the aesthetic appearance of the office.

Answer: C. To facilitate easy and quick retrieval of previous records.

Explanation: The arrangement of record files in an office is crucial for the quick and efficient retrieval of documents. Without such organization, locating and using previous records would be challenging, thus hindering office productivity.

Q4. Which example from the best illustrates the concept of classification in everyday life?

A. A computer processes data.

B. A postman sorting postal items for delivery.

C. A machine assembling products.

D. A library acquiring new books.

Answer: B. A postman sorting postal items for delivery.

Explanation: The postman's task of sorting postal items for efficient and timely delivery exemplifies the concept of classification in everyday life. It shows how items are categorized at various stages to ensure effective functioning, highlighting the practical application of classification.

Q5. What does the suggest about the relationship between a person's sophistication and their sense of classification?

A. Less sophisticated individuals have a better sense of classification.

B. There is no relationship between sophistication and classification skills.

C. More sophisticated individuals have a better sense of classification.

D. Sophistication impairs classification skills.

Answer: C. More sophisticated individuals have a better sense of classification.

Explanation: The suggests that the more sophisticated and intelligent a person is, the better their sense of classification. This implies that sophistication enhances an individual's ability to organize and relate items logically, leading to more efficient and effective classification.

Q6. What is the primary function of classification?

A. To enhance creativity.

B. To aid memory and reasoning power.

C. To improve physical health.

D. To reduce the number of items.

Answer: B. To aid memory and reasoning power.

Explanation: Classification is described as a way of thinking systematically and purposefully, which helps in aiding memory and reasoning power. It is essential for defining and understanding entities, as well as facilitating clear thought and communication.

Q7. According to J.S. Mill, how does classification benefit the mind?

A. It reduces the workload on the brain.

B. It enhances the mind's ability to conceive and remember entities or phenomena.

C. It improves the brain's physical structure.

D. It increases the speed of decision-making.

Answer: B. It enhances the mind's ability to conceive and remember entities or phenomena.

Explanation: J.S. Mill states that classification helps the mind clearly conceive and retain the nature of entities or phenomena in memory, thus improving cognitive functions.

Q8. How does Ranganathan relate classification to education and communication?

A. Classification hinders clear thinking and expression.

B. Classification is unrelated to education and communication.

C. Classification enhances sharpness in thinking, clarity in expression, and exactness in communication.

D. Classification simplifies complex ideas for better understanding.

Answer: C. Classification enhances sharpness in thinking, clarity in expression, and exactness in communication.

Explanation: Ranganathan emphasizes that classification is fundamental to sharp thinking, clear expression, and exact communication, indicating its educational value.

Q9. What role does a characteristic play in the process of classification?

A. It determines the physical location of items.

B. It is the basis for grouping or dividing entities.

C. It decreases the number of items to be classified.

D. It simplifies the classification process.

Answer: B. It is the basis for grouping or dividing entities.

Explanation: A characteristic is an attribute or property that relates an entity to a group or separates it from a group. It serves as the basis for classification, as illustrated by the examples of gender, education level, and subject content.

Q10. What is meant by the 'successive application of right and relevant characteristics' in classification?

A. It leads to a decrease in classification complexity.

B. It results in a broader classification of entities.

C. It produces deeper and finer classification.

D. It simplifies the classification process.

Answer: C. It produces deeper and finer classification.

Explanation: The successive application of right and relevant characteristics means using multiple attributes to classify entities, resulting in more detailed and refined groupings. This approach enhances the precision and depth of the classification system.

Q11. What is the genus in the example given for tables?

A. Material

B. Tables

C. Glass tables

D. Wooden tables

Answer: B. Tables

Explanation: In the example provided, "tables" is the genus, which is the general class or group being considered. The species are derived by adding a difference, such as material.

Q12. What is the difference used to produce species in the example of tables?

A. Shape

B. Size

C. Material

D. Color

Answer: C. Material

Explanation: The difference used to produce species in the example of tables is the material (e.g., glass, wood, plastic, metal), which differentiates the types of tables.

Q13. How did ancient philosophers like Porphyry divide the universe?

A. By using a continuous spectrum method.

B. By employing the dichotomous method.

C. By categorizing based on color.

D. By using the whole-part method.

Answer: B. By employing the dichotomous method.

Explanation: Ancient philosophers, including Porphyry, used the dichotomous method to divide the universe into two groups at each step, forming what is known as the tree of Porphyry.

Q14. Why is the dichotomous method considered artificial?

A. It is too complex to apply in real-life situations.

B. It ignores the presence of intermediate shades between two extremes.

C. It only applies to living organisms.

D. It requires advanced technology to implement.

Answer: B. It ignores the presence of intermediate shades between two extremes.

Explanation: The dichotomous method is considered artificial because it does not account for the many shades between two extremes (e.g., between white and black), oversimplifying the complexity of the universe.

Q15. What is the modern method of classification?

A. Continuous spectrum method

B. Whole-part method

C. Random division method

D. Dichotomous method

Answer: B. Whole-part method

Explanation: The modern method of classification is the genus-species or whole-part method, which provides a more nuanced and comprehensive approach compared to the dichotomous method.

Q16. Why are classificatory groups considered relative?

A. Because they are based on absolute criteria.

B. Because they depend on the context and reference to others.

C. Because they are universally applicable.

D. Because they are permanent and unchanging.

Answer: B. Because they depend on the context and reference to others.

Explanation: Classificatory groups are considered relative because an entity is classified in relation to others, and classifications depend on the context and reference points used.

Q17. What does it mean when the states that "classifications are man-made"?

A. Classifications exist naturally without human intervention.

B. Classifications are arbitrary and random.

C. Classifications are created by humans for specific purposes.

D. Classifications are always logical and objective.

Answer: C. Classifications are created by humans for specific purposes.

Explanation: The emphasizes that classifications are not naturally occurring but are created by humans to serve particular purposes, indicating their man-made nature.

Q18. How does the purpose of classification influence its usefulness?

A. A classification is always useful regardless of its purpose.

B. The purpose of classification determines whether it is helpful or unhelpful.

C. Classification has no practical implications.

D. The purpose of classification does not affect its logic.

Answer: B. The purpose of classification determines whether it is helpful or unhelpful.

Explanation: The usefulness of a classification depends on its purpose. A classification that serves its intended purpose well is considered the best, regardless of its logical structure.

Q19. Why might a scientist and a farmer have different classifications for certain animals?

A. Because their purposes and contexts are different.

B. Because they use the same criteria for classification.

C. Because they both follow the same scientific principles.

D. Because they want to produce the same outcomes.

Answer: A. Because their purposes and contexts are different.

Explanation: A scientist and a farmer might classify animals differently because their purposes and contexts differ. For example, a farmer views certain animals as crop enemies, while a scientist might classify them based on biological characteristics.

Q20. What does the suggest about the neutrality of classifications?

A. Classifications are always neutral and objective.

B. Classifications are influenced by the time, place, and society of their origin.

C. Classifications are universally accepted and unchanging.

D. Classifications are immune to societal and temporal influences.

Answer: B. Classifications are influenced by the time, place, and society of their origin.

Explanation: The suggests that classifications are not neutral; they reflect the context of the time, place, and society in which they were created, indicating that they are shaped by various influences.

Q21. According to Aristotle, what are the three aspects of classification?

A. Theoretical, practical, and aesthetic

B. Theoretical, practical, and productive science

C. Productive, aesthetic, and managerial

D. Managerial, theoretical, and financial

Answer: B. Theoretical, practical, and productive science

Explanation: Aristotle described classification as encompassing theoretical, practical, and productive science, highlighting its comprehensive nature in organizing and understanding various fields.

Q22. How does classification contribute to better management?

A. By reducing the number of items.

B. By saving time, money, and manpower.

C. By increasing the complexity of tasks.

D. By creating new items.

Answer: B. By saving time, money, and manpower

Explanation: Classification contributes to better management by organizing items and processes, leading to efficiency and economy of time, money, and manpower, as seen in libraries, stores, and various other settings.

Q23. What is the purpose of classification in aesthetics as?

A. To increase productivity.

B. To simplify tasks.

C. To create beauty and visual appeal.

D. To save time.

Answer: C. To create beauty and visual appeal

Explanation: In aesthetics, the purpose of classification is to create beauty and visual appeal, such as matching colors in home decor or clothing, to enhance the visual experience and feel good.

Q24. Why do philosophers, scientists, and researchers classify?

A. To increase their popularity.

B. To simplify their work.

C. To study and understand the growth and structure of knowledge.

D. To reduce the amount of information.

Answer: C. To study and understand the growth and structure of knowledge.

Explanation: Philosophers, scientists, and researchers classify to outline and map the vast sea of knowledge, enabling them to study, understand, and further explore and navigate this knowledge.

Q25. How is marriage an example of classification?

A. It involves a random selection of partners.

B. It requires matching financial statuses only.

C. It involves selecting and pairing based on various characteristics.

D. It is unrelated to classification.

Answer: C. It involves selecting and pairing based on various characteristics.

Explanation: Marriage is an example of classification as it involves selecting and pairing partners based on multiple characteristics such as age, religion, caste, looks, job, financial status, and educational qualifications, reflecting the application of classification in personal life decisions.

Q26. How did the Hindu Vedas categorize knowledge?

A. By theoretical, practical, and productive

B. By Dharam, Arth, Kam, and Moksh

C. By empirical, abstract, and symbolic

D. By ideas, theories, experiences, and facts

Answer: B. By Dharam, Arth, Kam, and Moksh

Explanation: The Hindu Vedas categorized knowledge into four categories: Dharam, Arth, Kam, and Moksh, reflecting their approach to organizing knowledge.

Q27. What did Aristotle's division of knowledge include?

A. Four categories: theoretical, practical, productive, and historical

B. Three parts: theoretical, practical, and productive

C. Five categories: symbolic, scientific, historical, fictional, and mythological

D. Ten categories: empirical, abstract, symbolic, etc.

Answer: B. Three parts: theoretical, practical, and productive

Explanation: Aristotle divided knowledge into three parts: theoretical, practical, and productive, further categorizing it into ten specific categories.

Q28. What is a propedia?

A. A historical record of knowledge

B. A classification of knowledge

C. A scientific theory

D. A type of knowledge artifact

Answer: B. A classification of knowledge

Explanation: A propedia is described as a classification of knowledge, illustrating the systematic organization of information.

Q29. How is knowledge defined in the?

A. As a collection of only scientific facts

B. As the sum total of ideas, theories, experiences, history, feelings, values, sciences, symbols, arts, facts, fiction, and myths conserved by a society.

C. As a set of myths and fictional stories

D. As a random assortment of historical events

Answer: B. As the sum total of ideas, theories, experiences, history, feelings, values, sciences, symbols, arts, facts, fiction, and myths conserved by a society.

Explanation: Knowledge is defined as the comprehensive sum of various elements including ideas, theories, experiences, and more, conserved by a society.

Q30. Why is the classification of knowledge essential?

A. To entertain people.

B. To simplify, understand, and progress in knowledge.

C. To create myths and fiction.

D. To segregate knowledge into unrelated categories.

Answer: B. To simplify, understand, and progress in knowledge.

Explanation: Classification of knowledge is essential for simplifying, understanding, and progressing knowledge, as it helps integrate innovative ideas with existing knowledge and supports further growth and development.

Q31. What is the primary purpose of libraries as?

A. To provide entertainment and leisure activities.

B. To house and preserve books and other documentary heritage.

C. To produce new knowledge.

D. To sell books and other information sources.

Answer: B. To house and preserve books and other documentary heritage.

Explanation: Libraries are established primarily to house and preserve books and other documentary heritage, ensuring the protection and conservation of knowledge.

Q32. How were books classified in earlier times?

A. By their subject content only

B. By language, size, color of binding, authorship, or broad subject categories

C. By their popularity

D. By their publication date

Answer: B. By language, size, color of binding, authorship, or broad subject categories

Explanation: In earlier times, books were classified based on numerous factors such as language, size, color of binding, authorship, or

broad subject categories, reflecting the methods used to organize collections.

Q33. What problem is associated with an unarranged collection of books?

A. It leads to the destruction of books.

B. It makes locating a specific book exceedingly difficult.

C. It causes books to lose their value.

D. It simplifies the process of finding books.

Answer: B. It makes locating a specific book exceedingly difficult.

Explanation: An unarranged collection of books is compared to a heap of hay, making it extremely difficult to locate a specific book, highlighting the importance of organization.

Q34. What was the main aim of libraries in earlier times?

A. To serve books to a wider audience.

B. To store and preserve documents.

C. To digitize all books.

D. To facilitate online access to books.

Answer: B. To store and preserve documents.

Explanation: The main aim of libraries in earlier times was to store and preserve documents, rather than actively serving them to scholars or the public.

Q35., who had access to knowledge in earlier times?

A. Everyone

B. Only the privileged few

C. Only librarians

D. Only those with a subscription

Answer: B. Only the privileged few

Explanation: Access to knowledge was predominantly reserved for the privileged few, reflecting the restricted nature of knowledge dissemination in earlier times.

Q1. What was the main characteristic of fixed location systems in the Pre-Dewey era?

A. Books were classified by subject content only.

B. Books were assigned a fixed place on the shelves with a specific call number.

C. Books were arranged randomly on the shelves.

D. Books were organized by color and size.

Answer: B. Books were assigned a fixed place on the shelves with a specific call number.

Explanation: Fixed location systems assigned a fixed place to each book on the shelves, with a call number indicating the exact location of the book, making it easy to locate even by a blind person.

Q2. How did fixed location systems manage shelf space?

A. By requiring space for intercalation of new books at every point on the shelves.

B. By utilizing vacant space only at the end of the shelf or almirah.

C. By randomly arranging books to fit new additions.

D. By periodically changing the shelf arrangement.

Answer: B. By utilizing vacant space only at the end of the shelf or almirah.

Explanation: Fixed location systems saved shelf space by requiring vacant space only at the end of the shelf or almirah, unlike relative location systems which required space for intercalation of new books.

Q3. What was a disadvantage of fixed location systems ?

A. They required a complex call number system.

B. They involved frequent reclassification of books, leading to labor and time wastage.

C. They were difficult for visually impaired individuals to use.

D. They were unsuitable for modern libraries.

Answer: B. They involved frequent reclassification of books, leading to labor and time wastage.

Explanation: Fixed location systems faced the disadvantage of requiring frequent reclassification of books, which was labor-intensive and time-consuming.

Q4. What problem did Melvil Dewey aim to solve with his relative classification system?

A. The need for more shelf space.

B. The difficulty in locating books on shelves.

C. The frequent reclassification of books and call number changes.

D. The complexity of the call number system.

Answer: C. The frequent reclassification of books and call number changes.

Explanation: Melvil Dewey aimed to solve the problem of frequent reclassification and call number changes that were associated with fixed location systems.

Q5. What question did Melvil Dewey pose regarding library classification?

A. How to arrange books by color and size.

B. How to give permanent call numbers to books in a library.

C. How to simplify the call number system for users.

D. How to integrate new books into existing systems.

Answer: B. How to give permanent call numbers to books in a library.

Explanation: Melvil Dewey's question was focused on finding a way to provide permanent call numbers to books in a library, addressing the issues of frequent reclassification in fixed location systems.

Q6. In relative systems, what does the class number refer to?

A. The fixed shelf location of the book.

B. The intrinsic subject of the book.

C. The size and color of the book.

D. The author of the book.

Answer: B. The intrinsic subject of the book.

Explanation: In relative systems, the class number refers to the intrinsic subject of the book rather than its fixed shelf location, facilitating a more flexible organization of books.

Q7. How did Melvil Dewey's decimal notation technique impact library classification?

A. It made classification more complicated.

B. It divided knowledge using decimal fraction numbers and indicated subject rather than shelf place.

C. It eliminated the need for any classification system.

D. It required all books to be sorted by color.

Answer: B. It divided knowledge using decimal fraction numbers and indicated subject rather than shelf place.

Explanation: Melvil Dewey's decimal notation technique allowed for dividing knowledge into divisions and subdivisions using decimal fractions, indicating subject rather than shelf place, which was a significant improvement in library classification.

Q8. What was the major advantage of relative location systems over fixed location systems?

A. They required less shelf space.

B. They allowed new books to be added without disturbing the relative location of existing books.

C. They made it easier to locate books by color.

D. They involved less frequent reclassification.

Answer: B. They allowed new books to be added without disturbing the relative location of existing books.

Explanation: Relative location systems allowed new books to be accommodated in their proper places without disturbing the relative location of existing books, maintaining the subject grouping.

Q9. How does the shelf location of books change in relative location systems with the addition of new books?

A. Books are fixed in their locations.

B. Books keep shifting to the right side, but their relative location to subjects remains the same.

C. Books are randomly rearranged.

D. Books are moved to the end of the shelf.

Answer: B. Books keep shifting to the right side, but their relative location to subjects remains the same.

Explanation: In relative location systems, the shelf location of books changes as new books are added, causing existing books to shift to the right, but their relative location in terms of subject grouping remains consistent.

Q10. What does imply about fixed location systems in modern libraries?

A. They are still widely used.

B. They have become obsolete and are considered a part of library history.

C. They are used for specialized collections.

D. They are used in conjunction with relative location systems.

Answer: B. They have become obsolete and are considered a part of library history.

Explanation: The fixed location systems have become obsolete, as modern libraries predominantly use relative location systems for classification.

Q11. What characterizes enumerative classification systems?

A. They use dynamic and flexible classification methods.

B. They provide pre-defined, fixed lists of subjects and their subdivisions.

C. They are primarily based on faceted classification principles.

D. They focus on individualizing documents according to various aspects.

Answer: B. They provide pre-defined, fixed lists of subjects and their subdivisions.

Explanation: Enumerative classification systems use pre-defined, fixed lists of subjects and their subdivisions, assigning notational marks to each subject, and are often considered outdated.

Q12. What is the primary limitation of enumerative classification systems ?

A. They are too dynamic and flexible for modern needs.

B. They only provide pre-made pigeon holes rather than individualizing documents.

C. They are difficult to use for information retrieval.

D. They do not use any notational marks for subjects.

Answer: B. They only provide pre-made pigeon holes rather than individualizing documents.

Explanation: The primary limitation of enumerative classification systems is that they offer pre-made pigeon holes for documents rather than tailoring classification to individual subjects and their documentary aspects.

Q13. Which system developed from the faceted classification system described in Ranganathan's theory?

A. Dewey Decimal Classification

B. Bibliography Classification

C. Analytico-synthetic classification

D. Universal Decimal Classification

Answer: C. Analytico-synthetic classification

Explanation: Ranganathan's faceted system evolved into the Analytico-synthetic classification, which is dynamic and effective for organizing knowledge and information retrieval.

Q14. What is a key feature of the Analytico-synthetic classification?

A. It relies solely on fixed, pre-defined subject lists.

B. It uses a dynamic model based on postulates and principles for knowledge organization.

C. It focuses only on shelf arrangement without information retrieval capabilities.

D. It is a historical system that is no longer used in modern libraries.

Answer: B. It uses a dynamic model based on postulates and principles for knowledge organization.

Explanation: The Analytico-synthetic classification uses a dynamic model based on postulates and principles, making it effective for modern knowledge organization and information retrieval.

Q15. How did the Universal Decimal Classification (UDC) evolve from the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC)?

A. By removing auxiliary subdivisions and simplifying the base numbers.

B. By adding auxiliary subdivisions and internal tables to make the class number multifaceted.

C. By focusing exclusively on a fixed, pre-defined list of subjects.

D. By abandoning the use of notational marks for subjects.

Answer: B. By adding auxiliary subdivisions and internal tables to make the class number multifaceted.

Explanation: The Universal Decimal Classification (UDC) evolved from the Dewey Decimal

Classification (DDC) by adding auxiliary subdivisions and internal tables to create a more multifaceted class number system.

Q16. What issue is mentioned regarding the additional provisions in the 18th edition of the DDC?

A. They introduced too few new tables and provisions.

B. They made the structure regular and uniform.

C. They were added late and created a non-uniform structure with problems.

D. They completely replaced the old classification system.

Answer: C. They were added late and created a non-uniform structure with problems.

Explanation: The additional provisions in the 18th edition of the DDC were introduced late, resulting in a non-uniform structure that had its own problems.

Q17. What is the primary purpose of classification?

A. To simplify and understand phenomena or objects.

B. To add unnecessary complexity to information.

C. To eliminate the need for categorization.

D. To focus solely on physical aspects of documents.

Answer: A. To simplify and understand phenomena or objects.

Explanation: Classification is a process aimed at simplifying and understanding phenomena or objects by organizing them into categories.

Q18. In library classification, what additional aspects beyond subject content must be accounted for?

A. Only the language of the document.

B. Language, viewpoint of the author, format, media, etc.

C. Only the format of the document.

D. Only the media type of the document.

Answer: B. Language, viewpoint of the author, format, media, etc.

Explanation: Library classifications must account for various non-subject aspects such as language, viewpoint of the author, format, and media, in addition to subject content.

Q19. What does ontology represent in the context of the semantic web?

A. A simple list of keywords.

B. A powerful classification tool that describes and represents knowledge areas.

C. A fixed and static subject classification.

D. A visual representation of physical objects.

Answer: B. A powerful classification tool that describes and represents knowledge areas.

Explanation: Ontology is a classification tool for the semantic web that describes and represents knowledge areas, including classes, relationships, and properties.

Q20. How does ontology help in knowledge organization and retrieval in an electronic environment?

A. By using traditional hierarchical classifications only.

B. By combining hierarchical classifications, subject heading lists, and thesauri with multidimensional relations.

C. By focusing solely on physical document arrangements.

D. By eliminating the need for any classification systems.

Answer: B. By combining hierarchical classifications, subject heading lists, and thesauri with multidimensional relations.

Explanation: Ontology helps in knowledge organization and retrieval by integrating traditional hierarchical classifications, subject heading lists, and thesauri with multidimensional relations, creating a comprehensive web of connections.

Q21. What additional features are included in library classification systems compared to general classification?

A. Only physical aspect notations.

B. Detailed notations/symbols, separate common tables for physical aspects, and detailed subject indexes.

C. Simple subject headings and basic lists.

D. A focus solely on electronic media.

Answer: B. Detailed notations/symbols, separate common tables for physical aspects, and detailed subject indexes.

Explanation: Library classification systems include detailed notations/symbols, separate common tables for physical aspects, and a detailed index of subjects, making them more comprehensive than general classification systems.

Q22. What is the main difference between general and special classification systems?

A. General classification systems cover specific areas of knowledge, while special classifications cover the entire universe of knowledge.

B. General classification systems cover the entire universe of knowledge, while special classifications cover specific areas of knowledge.

C. Special classifications are broader and less detailed, while general classifications are narrow and in-depth.

D. Special classifications are used exclusively in libraries, while general classifications are used in other fields.

Answer: B. General classification systems cover the entire universe of knowledge, while special classifications cover specific areas of knowledge.

Explanation: General classification systems encompass all areas of knowledge, while special classifications focus on specific fields or areas, such as Economics or Women Studies.

Q23. Which of the following is an example of a special classification scheme?

A. Dewey Decimal Classification

B. Library of Congress Classification

C. Uniclass

D. Universal Decimal Classification

Answer: C. Uniclass

Explanation: Uniclass is an example of a special classification scheme designed specifically for the construction industry.

Q24. What type of classification system is the London Education Classification?

A. General classification system

B. Special classification system

C. Relative location system

D. Fixed location system

Answer: B. Special classification system

Explanation: The London Education Classification is a special classification system that focuses on education-related subjects.

Q25. What is the purpose of special classification systems like the Thesaurus of Psychological Index Terms?

A. To provide a general overview of all knowledge areas.

B. To cover a broad range of subjects in a single classification.

C. To classify and index terms within a specific field, such as psychology.

D. To manage library collections in a fixed location.

Answer: C. To classify and index terms within a specific field, such as psychology.

Explanation: Special classification systems like the Thesaurus of Psychological Index Terms are designed to classify and index terms within a particular field, providing detailed organization within that area.

Q26. What is a general classification system?

A. A classification system that focuses on specific subjects or fields of knowledge.

B. A classification system that covers the entire universe of knowledge.

C. A classification system used only in specialized libraries.

D. A system used to classify physical aspects of documents.

Answer: B. A classification system that covers the entire universe of knowledge.

Explanation: General or universal classification systems encompass a broad range of subjects, aiming to classify the entire universe of knowledge.

Q27. Which of the following is an example of a general classification system?

A. Thesaurus of Psychological Index Terms

B. London Classification of Business Studies

C. Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC)

D. Uniclass

Answer: C. Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC)

Explanation: Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) is an example of a general classification system that covers a wide range of knowledge.

Q28. What is the purpose of the abridged edition of classification systems like the UDC?

A. To provide detailed classification for large libraries.

B. To offer a condensed version for small libraries and teaching purposes.

C. To include additional entries not found in the full edition.

D. To provide a historical overview of classification methods.

Answer: B. To offer a condensed version for small libraries and teaching purposes.

Explanation: The abridged edition of classification systems like the UDC is designed to be more manageable and is suitable for small libraries and educational use.

Q29. How did the Universal Decimal Classification (UDC) editions differ historically?

A. The UDC had only one standard edition until the 1980s.

B. The UDC was available in Full, Medium, and Abridged editions with varying levels of detail.

C. The UDC was exclusively available in a single abridged edition.

D. The UDC editions were only used in public libraries.

Answer: B. The UDC was available in Full, Medium, and Abridged editions with varying levels of detail.

Explanation: Historically, the UDC was available in Full, Medium, and Abridged editions, each providing different levels of detail and suited for different types of libraries.

Q30. Which version of the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) is available in a single volume?

A. Full version

B. Medium version

C. Abridged edition

D. Pocket edition

Answer: C. Abridged edition

Explanation: The Abridged edition of the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) is available in a single volume and provides a condensed version of the full classification system.

Q31. What is the primary use of the Abridged Dewey Decimal Classification?

A. For large university libraries with extensive collections.

B. For small libraries with about 20,000 titles and for teaching purposes.

C. For historical research and archival purposes.

D. For large public libraries and national libraries.

Answer: B. For small libraries with about 20,000 titles and for teaching purposes.

Explanation: The Abridged Dewey Decimal Classification is designed for smaller libraries and is popular in educational settings due to its simplified and cost-effective nature.

Q32. Who originally planned the Expansive Classification system, which inspired the development of various classification versions?

A. Melvil Dewey

B. C.A. Cutter

C. Ranganathan

D. Aristotle

Answer: B. C.A. Cutter

Explanation: C.A. Cutter planned the Expansive Classification system, which was designed to accommodate different levels of detail suitable for various sizes of libraries.

Q33. Why are abridged versions of classification systems like the Dewey Decimal Classification popular in developing countries?

A. They are more detailed and comprehensive.

B. They are comparatively inexpensive and suitable for smaller libraries.

C. They are specifically designed for national libraries.

D. They include more advanced features than full versions.

Answer: B. They are comparatively inexpensive and suitable for smaller libraries.

Explanation: Abridged versions are popular in developing countries due to their lower cost and suitability for smaller libraries with more limited collections.

Q34. How did the Expansive Classification by C.A. Cutter differ from the final version in terms of library size?

A. The final version was meant for small village libraries.

B. The first version was meant for large national libraries.

C. The final version was designed for large libraries with extensive collections.

D. The Expansive Classification did not have different versions.

Answer: C. The final version was designed for large libraries with extensive collections.

Explanation: The Expansive Classification was designed with successive schedules of increasing detail, with the final version intended for large libraries with comprehensive collections.

Q35. In what context can the Abridged Dewey Decimal Classification be used in conjunction with special classification systems?

A. To cover historical and rare books.

B. To address remaining general areas of knowledge.

C. To manage large volumes of special collections.

D. To replace the need for detailed classification systems.

Answer: B. To address remaining general areas of knowledge.

Explanation: The Abridged Dewey Decimal Classification can be used alongside special classification systems to cover general areas of knowledge not specifically addressed by the special systems.

Q36. How are official documents like reports, patents, and standards typically arranged in a library?

A. By title

B. By a special code number

C. Alphabetically by author

D. By publication date

Answer: B. By a special code number

Explanation: Official documents such as reports, patents, and standards are often arranged using a special code number assigned to them.

Q37. How is popular fiction usually organized in libraries?

A. By subject

B. Alphabetically by title

C. Alphabetically by author

D. By publication date

Answer: C. Alphabetically by author

Explanation: Popular fiction is generally arranged alphabetically by the author's name in libraries.

Q38. What type of arrangement is described by J. Mills for organizing books based on the group of users?

A. User-oriented system

B. Subject-based system

C. Chronological system

D. Alphabetical system

Answer: A. User-oriented system

Explanation: The user-oriented system is an arrangement method designed to group books together based on the needs of specific user groups.

Q39. Which of the following factors might influence the arrangement of documents in a library according to J. Mills?

A. Size of documents

B. Cost of documents

C. Digital format of documents

D. Author's nationality

Answer: A. Size of documents

Explanation: The size of documents is one of the factors listed by J. Mills that can affect how documents are arranged in a library.

Q40. What arrangement method is typically used for pamphlets in a library?

A. By author

B. By subject

C. Alphabetically by title

D. By publication date

Answer: C. Alphabetically by title

Explanation: Pamphlets are generally arranged alphabetically by their title in libraries.

Q41. Which type of document arrangement considers the age and grade of the reader?

A. Special code number arrangement

B. User-oriented system

C. Alphabetical arrangement

D. Chronological arrangement

Answer: B. User-oriented system

Explanation: The user-oriented system includes arrangements based on factors such as the age and grade of the reader.

Q42. What arrangement method might be used for documents of temporary significance?

A. By subject

B. By date of printing

C. By language

D. By significance

Answer: D. By significance

Explanation: Documents of temporary significance are arranged based on their relevance and importance at the time, rather than by subject or other factors.

Q43. How are documents such as films, cassettes, and CDs typically organized in libraries?

A. By author

B. By publication date

C. By physical considerations

D. By genre

Answer: C. By physical considerations

Explanation: Documents like films, cassettes, and CDs are often organized based on physical considerations specific to their format.

Q44. What was the name of the 21st edition (1996) of the Dewey Decimal Classification available on a CD?

A. Dewey for Windows (DfW)

B. Web Dewey 2.0

C. Dewey Decimal Online

D. Dewey Digital Edition

Answer: A. Dewey for Windows (DfW)

Explanation: The 21st edition (1996) of the Dewey Decimal Classification available on CD was called Dewey for Windows (DfW).

Q45. How is the electronic version of the Dewey Decimal Classification-23 (2011) accessed?

A. Through print version

B. Through OCLC Connexion on the Internet

C. Through local library systems

D. Through CD-ROM

Answer: B. Through OCLC Connexion on the Internet

Explanation: The electronic version of the Dewey Decimal Classification-23 (2011) is accessed through OCLC Connexion on the Internet.

Q46. What is the name of the electronic version of the Library of Congress Classification available online?

A. Classification Web

B. Dewey Decimal Online

C. LC Web Classification

D. Library Classification Web

Answer: A. Classification Web

Explanation: The electronic version of the Library of Congress Classification available online is called Classification Web.

Q47. What feature does Classification Web offer that includes links between class numbers and subject headings?

A. Expert systems for number building

B. Co-relations among LCC, LCSH, and Web Dewey

C. Versatile search tools

D. Easy updating system

Answer: B. Co-relations among LCC, LCSH, and Web Dewey

Explanation: Classification Web displays co-relations among LCC, LCSH, and Web Dewey, including links between class numbers and subject headings.

Q48. What is the Broad System of Ordering (BSO) now available as?

A. CD-ROM

B. Print edition

C. Machine readable form on disk and on the web

D. Online database only

Answer: C. Machine readable form on disk and on the web

Explanation: The Broad System of Ordering (BSO) is now available only as a machine-readable form on disk and on the web.

Q49. How are electronic versions of classification systems advantageous compared to print or CD versions?

A. They are easily pirated and duplicated

B. They are less versatile and updated less frequently

C. They are easy to use, versatile, and updated monthly

D. They are less accessible and require special hardware

Answer: C. They are easy to use, versatile, and updated monthly

Explanation: Electronic versions of classification systems are easy to use, versatile with many features, and updated monthly, unlike print or CD versions.

Q50. What are Enumerative Classifications also known as?

A. Mark and Park Systems

B. Faceted Systems

C. Fixed Location Systems

D. Knowledge Mapping

Answer: A. Mark and Park Systems

Explanation: Enumerative classifications, also known as 'Mark and Park Systems,' involve systematic lists of subjects along with their class numbers, creating predefined categories for classification.

Q51. What is a Facet in the context of classification?

A. A classification system that combines multiple characteristics

B. A group of entities obtained by applying a single characteristic

C. A fixed location system for books on shelves

D. A hierarchical classification for the semantic web

Answer: B. A group of entities obtained by applying a single characteristic

Explanation: A facet refers to a group of entities obtained by applying a single characteristic, such as the kind of libraries in library science.

Q52. How does Faceted Classification differ from Enumerative Classification?

A. Faceted Classification creates pigeonholes for subjects, while Enumerative Classification does not.

B. Faceted Classification divides a main class into facets and combines them in a specified order, while Enumerative Classification uses long lists of subjects with class numbers.

C. Faceted Classification is used for fixed locations, while Enumerative Classification is used for the semantic web.

D. Faceted Classification only uses broad subjects, while Enumerative Classification uses specific details.

Answer: B. Faceted Classification divides a main class into facets and combines them in a specified order, while Enumerative Classification uses long lists of subjects with class numbers.

Explanation: Faceted classification divides a main class into various facets and combines them to tailor a class number, while enumerative classification uses systematic lists and predefined categories.

Q53. What do Fixed Location Systems indicate?

A. The intrinsic subject of the book

B. The hierarchical relationships among entities

C. The shelf ground or location of a book

D. The scientific classification of animals and plants

Answer: C. The shelf ground or location of a book

Explanation: Fixed location systems indicate the shelf ground or location of a book, similar to house numbers in a city.

Q54. What does Knowledge Classification involve?

A. The hierarchical and multi-relational classifications for the semantic web

B. The systematic outline of knowledge known at a time to study its growth and structure

C. The classification of micro subjects like theses and patents

D. The scientific classification of animals and plants

Answer: B. The systematic outline of knowledge known at a time to study its growth and structure

Explanation: Knowledge classification involves systematically outlining knowledge to study its growth and structure, essentially mapping knowledge.

Q55. What are Ontologies used for?

A. Creating pigeonholes for subjects

B. Hierarchical and multi-relational classifications for the semantic web

C. Dividing a main class into facets

D. Arranging books based on fixed locations

Answer: B. Hierarchical and multi-relational classifications for the semantic web

Explanation: Ontologies are used for hierarchical and multi-relational classifications for the semantic web.

Q56. What is Special Classification designed for?

A. Broad and general classifications of the entire universe of knowledge

B. Systematic outlines of knowledge to study its growth and structure

C. Depth classification for limited and narrow areas of knowledge used for information retrieval

D. Scientific classification of animals and plants

Answer: C. Depth classification for limited and narrow areas of knowledge used for information retrieval

Explanation: Special classification is designed for depth classification of limited and narrow areas of knowledge, such as theses, journal articles, patents, and research reports.

Q57. What is Taxonomy primarily concerned with?

A. Systematic outline of knowledge

B. Hierarchical and multi-relational classifications for the semantic web

C. Scientific classification of animals and plants

D. Classification of micro subjects

Answer: C. Scientific classification of animals and plants

Explanation: Taxonomy is the scientific classification of animals and plants.

Q1. When did modern library classification begin?

A. Early nineteenth century

B. Late nineteenth century

C. Early twentieth century

D. Late twentieth century

Answer: B. Late nineteenth century

Explanation: Modern library classification started in the late nineteenth century, marking the beginning of significant developments in classification systems.

Q2. What was the initial approach to classification systems such as DDC, UDC, and LCC?

A. Guided by extensive theoretical frameworks

B. Developed with significant theoretical guidance

C. Designed mainly based on intuition and flair

D. Based on empirical research and detailed theory

Answer: C. Designed mainly based on intuition and flair

Explanation: Initially, classification systems like DDC, UDC, and LCC were developed with minimal theoretical guidance, relying more on intuition and the personal insights of their creators.

Q3. Who derived the theory of classification in the form of canons in his famous books?

A. E.W. Hulme

B. E.C. Richardson

C. W.C.B. Sayers

D. H.E. Bliss

Answer: C. W.C.B. Sayers

Explanation: W.C.B. Sayers derived the theory of classification through canons outlined in his influential books, contributing to the development of classification theory.

Q4. What was the primary focus of E.W. Hulme and E.C. Richardson's work?

A. Developing new classification systems

B. Designing the Bibliographic Classification

C. Descriptive analysis of existing classification schemes

D. Creating theoretical foundations for classification

Answer: C. Descriptive analysis of existing classification schemes

Explanation: E.W. Hulme and E.C. Richardson focused on describing and analyzing existing classification schemes, contributing to the descriptive phase of classification theory.

Q5. What is the title of H.E. Bliss's classification system?

A. Universal Decimal Classification

B. Dewey Decimal Classification

C. Bibliographic Classification

D. Library of Congress Classification

Answer: C. Bibliographic Classification

Explanation: H.E. Bliss designed Bibliographic Classification, which he developed extensively throughout his career.

Q6. What were the titles of H.E. Bliss's books that focused on the theoretical foundations of library classification?

A. Organizing of Knowledge and System of Sciences; Organization of Knowledge and Subject Approach to Books in Libraries

B. Principles of Classification; Theory of Library Classification

C. Introduction to Classification; Modern Classification Systems

D. History of Classification; Advanced Classification Techniques

Answer: A. Organizing of Knowledge and System of Sciences; Organization of Knowledge and Subject Approach to Books in Libraries

Explanation: H.E. Bliss authored "Organizing of Knowledge and System of Sciences" (1929) and "Organization of Knowledge and Subject Approach to Books in Libraries" (1933, 2nd ed. 1939), which explored the theoretical foundations of library classification.

Q7. What phase of theory did Bliss's work represent in library classification?

A. Theoretical development

B. Descriptive theory

C. Empirical research

D. Practical application

Answer: B. Descriptive theory

Explanation: Bliss's work primarily represented the descriptive theory phase, focusing on the empirical foundations and principles guiding classification design.

Q8. What does the postulational approach in classification involve?

A. Intuitive and unstructured methods

B. Pre-mediated theory with Laws, Canons, Principles, and Postulates

C. Descriptive analysis of existing classifications

D. Empirical and observational techniques

Answer: B. Pre-mediated theory with Laws, Canons, Principles, and Postulates

Explanation: The postulational approach involves designing classification systems based on pre-mediated theories, including Laws, Canons, Principles, and Postulates.

Q9. How did Ranganathan initially design the Colon Classification (CC)?

A. Using a pre-formulated theory

B. Based on intuitive and unstructured methods

C. Without a formulated theory, later developing it

D. By following established classification canons

Answer: C. Without a formulated theory, later developing it

Explanation: Ranganathan initially designed the Colon Classification (CC) without a formulated theory and later developed the theory behind it, which was initially in his unconscious mind.

Q10. What comprehensive theory did Ranganathan develop after publishing the Colon Classification?

A. Theory of Classification in General

B. Theory of Subject Headings

C. Theory of Information Retrieval

D. Theory of Bibliographic Control

Answer: A. Theory of Classification in General

Explanation: After publishing Colon Classification, Ranganathan developed a comprehensive theory of classification in general, which included objective and mechanical methods.

Q11. How many Canons, Principles, Postulates, and Devices did Ranganathan formulate for classification design?

A. 55 Canons, 22 Principles, 13 Postulates, and 10 Devices

B. 50 Canons, 20 Principles, 15 Postulates, and 12 Devices

C. 60 Canons, 25 Principles, 10 Postulates, and 8 Devices

D. 45 Canons, 30 Principles, 12 Postulates, and 15 Devices

Answer: A. 55 Canons, 22 Principles, 13 Postulates, and 10 Devices

Explanation: Ranganathan formulated 55 Canons, 22 Principles, 13 Postulates, and 10 Devices for synthesizing class numbers and evaluating classification systems.

Q12. What were the three planes of work that Ranganathan divided his classification design into?

A. Conceptual, Practical, and Theoretical

B. Idea, Verbal, and Notational

C. Empirical, Descriptive, and Prescriptive

D. Subject, Object, and Methodological

Answer: B. Idea, Verbal, and Notational

Explanation: Ranganathan divided his classification design work into three planes: Idea, Verbal, and Notational.

Q13. What impact did Ranganathan's approach have on classification design?

A. It kept classification design as an art form

B. It raised classification design to the status of a science

C. It simplified the classification process without theoretical input

D. It focused solely on practical application without theoretical development

Answer: B. It raised classification design to the status of a science

Explanation: Ranganathan's approach elevated classification design from being an intuitive process to a scientific discipline through the development of a systematic theory.

Q14. What is the primary focus of the Idea Plane in classification design?

A. Application of classification systems to practical scenarios

B. Choice of model, defining the subject, and arranging characteristics

C. Development of notational systems and symbols

D. Evaluation of existing classification systems

Answer: B. Choice of model, defining the subject, and arranging characteristics

Explanation: The Idea Plane focuses on the core intellectual work, including the choice of the model, defining the subject, and arranging characteristics into facets and isolates.

Q15. What does Ranganathan's Idea Plane involve in terms of characteristics?

A. Creating visual representations and diagrams

B. Arranging characteristics into arrays and chains

C. Developing practical applications for classification

D. Analyzing the historical development of classification systems

Answer: B. Arranging characteristics into arrays and chains

Explanation: In the Idea Plane, Ranganathan's work involves arranging characteristics into arrays and chains, and defining facets and isolates.

Q16. How many sets of canons did Ranganathan provide for the Idea Plane?

A. Four sets

B. Five sets

C. Six sets

D. Seven sets

Answer: B. Five sets

Explanation: Ranganathan provided five sets of canons for the work in the Idea Plane.

Q17. Which of the following is NOT one of Ranganathan's canons for the Idea Plane?

A. Canons of Characteristics

B. Canons for Formation of Arrays of Classes

C. Canons for Notational Systems

D. Canons for Succession of Characteristics

Answer: C. Canons for Notational Systems

Explanation: Ranganathan's canons for the Idea Plane include Canons of Characteristics, Succession of Characteristics, Formation of Arrays of Classes, Formation of Chains of Classes, and Filiatory Sequence, but not Notational Systems.

Q18. What is the purpose of the Canons for Succession of Characteristics?

A. To define the subject and scope of the classification

B. To arrange isolates into arrays and chains

C. To determine the order in which characteristics are applied

D. To develop the notational and symbol systems

Answer: C. To determine the order in which characteristics are applied

Explanation: The Canons for Succession of Characteristics focus on determining the order in which characteristics are applied in classification.

Q19. What is the function of the Canons for Filiatory Sequence?

A. To create visual diagrams for classification

B. To establish the sequence of related classes in classification

C. To arrange books on shelves according to subject

D. To define the scope of terms and concepts

Answer: B. To establish the sequence of related classes in classification

Explanation: The Canons for Filiatory Sequence are concerned with establishing the sequence of related classes in the classification system.

Q20. What is the purpose of the Canons of Characteristics in classification design?

A. To develop a visual layout for the classification system

B. To choose and apply attributes to divide a subject into smaller groups

C. To evaluate existing classification systems

D. To establish the order of subject classes

Answer: B. To choose and apply attributes to divide a subject into smaller groups

Explanation: The Canons of Characteristics involve choosing and applying attributes (characteristics) to divide a subject into smaller groups, ensuring the classification system is well-organized.

Q21. What is the Canon of Differentiation concerned with?

A. Ensuring the characteristics are easily ascertainable

B. Selecting attributes that effectively divide a subject into distinct groups

C. Maintaining the permanence of characteristics over time

D. Arranging characteristics into a sequential order

Answer: B. Selecting attributes that effectively divide a subject into distinct groups

Explanation: The Canon of Differentiation focuses on selecting attributes that effectively divide a subject into distinct and separate groups.

Q22. What does the Canon of Ascertainability ensure in the classification process?

A. The characteristics used are permanent and unchanging

B. The attributes chosen are easy to determine and verify

C. The subject is divided into a fixed number of groups

D. The classification system remains flexible over time

Answer: B. The attributes chosen are easy to determine and verify

Explanation: The Canon of Ascertainability ensures that the attributes or characteristics used for classification are easy to determine and verify.

Q23. How does the Canon of Permanence contribute to classification design?

A. By ensuring that the characteristics are dynamic and adaptable

B. By making sure the characteristics remain consistent and unchanged over time

C. By allowing frequent updates to the classification system

D. By focusing on the temporary aspects of the subject

Answer: B. By making sure the characteristics remain consistent and unchanged over time

Explanation: The Canon of Permanence ensures that the characteristics used in the classification system remain consistent and unchanged over time.

Q24. What is the role of characteristics in the classification process according to the Canons of Characteristics?

A. To provide a visual representation of the classification system

B. To divide the subject into smaller, manageable groups based on attributes

C. To arrange books on shelves according to their physical characteristics

D. To develop a notational system for class numbers

Answer: B. To divide the subject into smaller, manageable groups based on attributes

Explanation: Characteristics are used to divide the subject into smaller, manageable groups based on specific attributes, facilitating effective classification.

Q25. What does the Canon of Differentiation require for a characteristic used in classification?

A. The characteristic must be temporary and changeable

B. The characteristic should divide the group into at least two sub-groups

C. The characteristic should be based on unverifiable traits

D. The characteristic should be common to all entities in the group

Answer: B. The characteristic should divide the group into at least two sub-groups

Explanation: The Canon of Differentiation requires that the characteristic used must be able to divide the group into at least two distinct sub-groups.

Q26. According to the Canon of Ascertainability, what should be true about the characteristics used in classification?

A. They should be unverifiable

B. They should be based on changeable traits

C. They should be verifiable and certain

D. They should be relevant to the subject matter

Answer: C. They should be verifiable and certain

Explanation: The Canon of Ascertainability mandates that the characteristics used for classification must be verifiable and certain.

Q27. What does the Canon of Permanence ensure regarding characteristics used in classification?

A. The characteristics should be changeable and dynamic

B. The characteristics should remain consistent and not change over time

C. The characteristics should be temporary and subject to frequent updates

D. The characteristics should be based on subjective traits

Answer: B. The characteristics should remain consistent and not change over time

Explanation: The Canon of Permanence ensures that the characteristics used in classification should remain consistent and not change over time.

Q28. How does the Canon of Relevance guide the choice of characteristics in classification?

A. The characteristics should be based on physical appearance

B. The characteristics should be irrelevant to the classification purpose

C. The characteristics should be most helpful for the purpose of classification

D. The characteristics should be chosen arbitrarily

Answer: C. The characteristics should be most helpful for the purpose of classification

Explanation: The Canon of Relevance stipulates that the characteristics chosen must be most helpful for the purpose of classification, ensuring that they are relevant to the classification's goals.

Q29. What is a key challenge mentioned by Ranganathan regarding the determination of the ultimate purpose of classification?

A. Identifying the most irrelevant characteristics

B. Predicting future changes in classification needs

C. Determining the ultimate purpose of classification can be difficult

D. Selecting characteristics that are not easily ascertainable

Answer: C. Determining the ultimate purpose of classification can be difficult

Explanation: Ranganathan warns that determining the ultimate purpose of classification is not an easy task, highlighting the complexity of identifying relevant and effective characteristics.

Q30. What does the Canon of Concomitance address in the application of characteristics in classification?

A. The order of applying characteristics

B. The need for characteristics to be applied simultaneously

C. The irrelevance of characteristics to the classification purpose

D. The temporary nature of characteristics

Answer: B. The need for characteristics to be applied simultaneously

Explanation: The Canon of Concomitance addresses the need for characteristics to be applied simultaneously when classifying, ensuring that each characteristic is used appropriately and consistently.

Q31. How does the Canon of Relevant Succession guide the use of characteristics in classification?

A. Characteristics should be applied randomly

B. Characteristics should be applied in any sequence

C. Characteristics should be applied in a sequence that reflects their relevance

D. Characteristics should not be sequenced

Answer: C. Characteristics should be applied in a sequence that reflects their relevance

Explanation: The Canon of Relevant Succession guides that characteristics should be applied in a sequence that reflects their relevance, ensuring a logical and effective classification process.

Q32. What is the focus of the Canon of Consistent Succession in classification?

A. Using characteristics in a random order

B. Ensuring the sequence of characteristics is consistent throughout

C. Applying characteristics that change frequently

D. Using characteristics that do not relate to each other

Answer: B. Ensuring the sequence of characteristics is consistent throughout

Explanation: The Canon of Consistent Succession focuses on ensuring that the sequence in which characteristics are applied remains consistent throughout the classification, maintaining coherence and reliability.

Q33. What does the Canon of Concomitance ensure regarding the application of characteristics?

A. Characteristics must be applied at random

B. Characteristics should produce distinct sub-classes

C. Characteristics should happen at different times

D. Characteristics should produce the same sub-classes

Answer: B. Characteristics should produce distinct sub-classes

Explanation: The Canon of Concomitance ensures that characteristics applied to a class should produce distinct sub-classes and not result in the same grouping.

Q34. How does the Canon of Concomitance address the application of characteristics that are inherently similar?

A. Characteristics should be applied in reverse order

B. Characteristics should be similar to avoid duplication

C. Characteristics should not be inherently similar to prevent overlap

D. Characteristics should be applied randomly

Answer: C. Characteristics should not be inherently similar to prevent overlap

Explanation: The Canon of Concomitance dictates that characteristics applied should not be inherently similar, as this would result in overlapping or duplicate classifications.

Q35. What does the Canon of Relevant Succession emphasize in the sequence of applying characteristics?

A. Characteristics should be applied in any sequence

B. Characteristics should be applied in reverse order

C. Characteristics should be applied in a sequence relevant to the purpose of classification

D. Characteristics should be irrelevant to the classification purpose

Answer: C. Characteristics should be applied in a sequence relevant to the purpose of classification

Explanation: The Canon of Relevant Succession emphasizes that the sequence of applying characteristics should be relevant to the purpose of the classification, ensuring an effective and purposeful arrangement.

Q36. What does the Canon of Exhaustiveness ensure for an array?

A. The array includes only a few members

B. The array includes some members but not all

C. The array is all-inclusive of its eligible members

D. The array excludes non-eligible members

Answer: C. The array is all-inclusive of its eligible members

Explanation: The Canon of Exhaustiveness ensures that an array includes all possible members within its scope, making the classification comprehensive.

Q37. How does the Canon of Exclusiveness impact the formation of arrays?

A. It allows entities to belong to multiple arrays

B. It ensures that each entity belongs to only one array

C. It encourages entities to be cross-classified

D. It eliminates the need for distinct arrays

Answer: B. It ensures that each entity belongs to only one array

Explanation: The Canon of Exclusiveness ensures that each entity is assigned to one and only one array, preventing overlap and cross-classification.

Q38. What is the main concern of the Canon of Helpful Sequence in array formation?

A. The sequence should be random

B. The sequence should follow historical precedence

C. The sequence should be relevant and useful for the classification purpose

D. The sequence should be inconsistent

Answer: C. The sequence should be relevant and useful for the classification purpose

Explanation: The Canon of Helpful Sequence ensures that the order in which entities are arranged in an array is relevant and useful for the intended classification purpose.

Q39. What does the Canon of Consistent Sequence require in the arrangement of arrays?

A. The sequence should vary in different arrays

B. The sequence should be arbitrary

C. The sequence should be consistent across all arrays

D. The sequence should follow no order

Answer: C. The sequence should be consistent across all arrays

Explanation: The Canon of Consistent Sequence requires that the order of entities in an array be consistent to maintain uniformity and clarity in classification.

Q40. What does the Principle of Chronological Sequence suggest for arranging entities?

A. Arrange entities by their popularity

B. Arrange entities by their evolution

C. Arrange entities by their period of occurrence or historical sequence

D. Arrange entities by their geographical proximity

Answer: C. Arrange entities by their period of occurrence or historical sequence

Explanation: The Principle of Chronological Sequence suggests arranging entities based on their historical occurrence or time period, such as arranging historical figures or events in the order they happened.

Q41. How does the Principle of Increasing Complexity apply to the arrangement of entities?

A. Entities are arranged by their geographical proximity

B. Entities are arranged in the order of their increasing quantity

C. Entities are arranged in the order of their increasing complexity

D. Entities are arranged alphabetically

Answer: C. Entities are arranged in the order of their increasing complexity

Explanation: The Principle of Increasing Complexity suggests arranging entities from simplest to most complex, such as linguistic elements from syllable to paragraph.

Q42. What does the Principle of Geographical Proximity dictate for arranging entities?

A. Arrange entities in alphabetical order

B. Arrange entities based on their popularity

C. Arrange entities according to their spatial closeness

D. Arrange entities by their historical sequence

Answer: C. Arrange entities according to their spatial closeness

Explanation: The Principle of Geographical Proximity suggests arranging entities based on their physical closeness or spatial arrangement, such as arranging geographical locations or celestial bodies.

Q43. When should the Principle of Alphabetical Order be used according to Ranganathan?

A. As the primary method for arrangement

B. When no other principles apply

C. For arranging entities by their complexity

D. For arranging entities based on their quantity

Answer: B. When no other principles apply

Explanation: Ranganathan advised using alphabetical order as a last resort when no other principles are applicable, noting its ease of use but considering it less ideal for classification.

Q44. What does the Principle of Quantitative Measure suggest for arranging entities?

A. Arrange entities by their popularity

B. Arrange entities by their increasing complexity

C. Arrange entities in the order of their associated quantity

D. Arrange entities by their historical significance

Answer: C. Arrange entities in the order of their associated quantity

Explanation: The Principle of Quantitative Measure suggests arranging entities based on the quantity associated with them, such as currency notes in increasing denominations.

Q49. What is the primary focus of the Canon of Decreasing Extension in a chain of classes?

A. To arrange entities from specific to general

B. To arrange entities from broader to narrower or general to specific

C. To ensure all entities are included in the chain

D. To use alphabetical order for arranging entities

Answer: B. To arrange entities from broader to narrower or general to specific

Explanation: The Canon of Decreasing Extension focuses on arranging entities from broader categories to narrower ones, or from general concepts to specific ones.

Q50. What does the Canon of Modulation require when arranging entities in a chain?

A. To ensure entities are arranged by popularity

B. To avoid skipping or omitting any intermediate links in the chain

C. To arrange entities by their historical sequence

D. To arrange entities alphabetically

Answer: B. To avoid skipping or omitting any intermediate links in the chain

Explanation: The Canon of Modulation requires that no intermediate links be skipped in a chain, ensuring a complete and continuous sequence of entities.

Q51. Which example illustrates a chain of classes arranged according to the Canon of Decreasing Extension?

A. Social Sciences – Economics – Financial Economics – Money – Banks

B. Grandfather, father, sons, grandchildren

C. Asia, South Asia, India, North India, Punjab, Amritsar

D. Birds, Feathers, Wings

Answer: C. Asia, South Asia, India, North India, Punjab, Amritsar

Explanation: This example shows a chain of geographical entities arranged from a broad category to more specific locations, demonstrating the Canon of Decreasing Extension.

Q52. How does the Canon of Modulation apply to the arrangement of a chain of classes?

A. By ensuring the chain is arranged in alphabetical order

B. By maintaining a logical and complete sequence without missing any links

C. By arranging classes based on their chronological order

D. By grouping entities according to their physical size

Answer: B. By maintaining a logical and complete sequence without missing any links

Explanation: The Canon of Modulation ensures that all intermediate steps in the chain are included, avoiding any gaps or omissions in the sequence of classes.

Q53. What is the main objective of the Verbal Plane in the classification process?

A. To arrange entities in arrays and chains

B. To assign standardized names to concepts and ideas

C. To analyze the characteristics of entities

D. To ensure a complete chain of classes

Answer: B. To assign standardized names to concepts and ideas

Explanation: The Verbal Plane focuses on giving standardized names to concepts arranged in the Idea Plane, allowing for effective communication and handling of these ideas.

Q54. What is the science of assigning terms to ideas called?

A. Lexicography

B. Semantics

C. Terminology

D. Etymology

Answer: C. Terminology

Explanation: Terminology is the science of assigning terms to ideas, ensuring that concepts are expressed and communicated effectively.

Q55. How does Ranganathan describe the nature of language in relation to thought and civilization?

A. Language is a barrier to thought and progress

B. Language is essential for thought, civilization, and progress

C. Language limits artistic and scientific expression

D. Language has no impact on civilization

Answer: B. Language is essential for thought, civilization, and progress

Explanation: Ranganathan emphasizes that language is crucial for thought, civilization, and progress, as it allows for the expression and communication of ideas.

Q56. What is the term for words that have more than one meaning?

A. Synonyms

B. Homonyms

C. Antonyms

D. Hypernyms

Answer: B. Homonyms

Explanation: Words that have more than one meaning are called homonyms. For example, "cricket" can refer to a game or an insect.

Q57. What term is used for different words that have the same meaning?

A. Homonyms

B. Antonyms

C. Synonyms

D. Hyponyms

Answer: C. Synonyms

Explanation: Different words that have the same meaning are called synonyms, such as "wages," "pay," and "salary."

Q58. How does Ranganathan view the role of homonyms and synonyms in literary writing?

A. They limit the richness of writing

B. They are irrelevant to literary aesthetics

C. They enhance the richness and imaginative quality of writing

D. They complicate the understanding of texts

Answer: C. They enhance the richness and imaginative quality of writing

Explanation: Ranganathan sees homonyms and synonyms as useful for literary writers, as they add richness, imagination, and aesthetic pleasure to writing.

Q59. What is the primary quality Ranganathan emphasizes for terminology in classification?

A. Use of multiple meanings for clarity

B. Avoidance of homonyms and synonyms

C. Complexity in terminology

D. Inclusion of irrelevant terms

Answer: B. Avoidance of homonyms and synonyms

Explanation: Ranganathan emphasizes that terminology in classification should be free of homonyms and synonyms to ensure clarity and precision.

Q60. What does the Canon of Context stipulate regarding the use of terms in classification schedules?

A. Terms should be presented with their complete definitions

B. Terms should be used without considering their context

C. Terms should be written and read in the context of the upper class

D. Terms should be described in multiple languages

Answer: C. Terms should be written and read in the context of the upper class

Explanation: The Canon of Context requires that terms in classification schedules be written and understood in the context of their broader categories to ensure clarity and relevance.

Q61. Which Canon emphasizes the importance of including all relevant items in a list or schedule?

A. Canon of Enumeration

B. Canon of Currency

C. Canon of Reticence

D. Canon of Context

Answer: A. Canon of Enumeration

Explanation: The Canon of Enumeration focuses on including all relevant items in a list or classification schedule, ensuring completeness and comprehensiveness.

Q62. What does the Canon of Currency refer to in the context of terminology?

A. Using outdated terms to maintain tradition

B. Updating terms to reflect current knowledge and usage

C. Avoiding the use of new terms

D. Including only historical terms

Answer: B. Updating terms to reflect current knowledge and usage

Explanation: The Canon of Currency refers to the need for updating terms to ensure they reflect current

knowledge and usage, keeping the classification relevant and accurate.

Q63. What principle is highlighted by the Canon of Reticence?

A. Including all possible meanings for a term

B. Avoiding the use of unnecessary terms or details

C. Expanding the scope of classification

D. Repeating terms for clarity

Answer: B. Avoiding the use of unnecessary terms or details

Explanation: The Canon of Reticence emphasizes the importance of avoiding unnecessary terms or details, focusing on relevance and simplicity in classification.

Q64. According to the Canon of Enumeration, how should the scope of terms or disciplines be delineated when there is debate about their classification?

A. By listing all possible meanings

B. By using broad generalizations

C. By enumerating its subdivisions

D. By avoiding detailed classification

Answer: C. By enumerating its subdivisions

Explanation: The Canon of Enumeration advises that when the scope of terms or disciplines is debatable, it is practical to define the scope by listing or enumerating its subdivisions to clarify its coverage.

Q65. What does the Canon of Currency emphasize regarding terminology in classification systems?

A. Using outdated terminology to maintain tradition

B. Updating terminology to reflect current usage and concepts

C. Avoiding changes to established terms

D. Incorporating historical terms for completeness

Answer: B. Updating terminology to reflect current usage and concepts

Explanation: The Canon of Currency emphasizes the need to update terminology in classification systems to reflect current usage and concepts, ensuring the system remains relevant and accurate.

Q66. What does the Canon of Reticence advise regarding the use of terms in classification schedules?

A. Using judgmental and critical terms to describe subjects

B. Avoiding terms that are subjective or controversial

C. Incorporating terms with historical significance

D. Using terms that are specific to individual scholars

Answer: B. Avoiding terms that are subjective or controversial

Explanation: The Canon of Reticence advises against using judgmental or critical terms in classification schedules, advocating for neutral and objective terminology to avoid bias and maintain respect for all subjects.

Q67. How has the terminology for "library science" changed according to the Canon of Currency?

A. It has been replaced by "Information Science"

B. It has become "Library and Information Science"

C. It is now called "Information Management"

D. It has been combined with "Home Science"

Answer: B. It has become "Library and Information Science"

Explanation: According to the Canon of Currency, the term "library science" has evolved into "Library and Information Science" to reflect the current terminology and developments in the field.

Q68. What is the main purpose of adhering to the Canon of Currency in classification systems?

A. To maintain historical terminology

B. To ensure the classification system is respected and up to date

C. To use only traditional terms

D. To limit the scope of classification

Answer: B. To ensure the classification system is respected and up to date

Explanation: Adhering to the Canon of Currency helps ensure that the classification system is both respected and current, making it more effective and relevant in academic and professional contexts.

Q69. What is the main role of notation in a library classification system?

A. To create new subjects

B. To represent subjects with symbols or codes

C. To replace the verbal plane

D. To develop concepts and names

Answer: B. To represent subjects with symbols or codes

Explanation: The main role of notation in a library classification system is to represent subjects with symbols or codes, which are derived from the concepts and names developed in the idea and verbal planes.

Q70. According to Ranganathan, how does notation function in relation to the idea plane?

A. As a replacement for the idea plane

B. As a servant of the idea plane

C. As an independent system from the idea plane

D. As a conceptual plane

Answer: B. As a servant of the idea plane

Explanation: Ranganathan viewed notation as a servant of the idea plane, meaning it implements the decisions and findings of the idea plane but does not create or alter those concepts.

Q71. Which canon prescribes that a class number should denote one and only one subject, and vice versa?

A. Canon of Faceted Notation

B. Canon of Hierarchy

C. Canon of Homonym and Synonym

D. Canon of Co-extensiveness

Answer: C. Canon of Homonym and Synonym

Explanation: The Canon of Homonym and Synonym prescribes that a class number should denote one and only one subject, and conversely, a subject should be denoted by one and only one class number.

canons for the choice and design of a notational system. These are: 1) Canon of Homonym and Synonym 2) Canon of Relativity and Uniformity 3) Canon of Hierarchy 4) Canon of Mixed Notation 5) Canon of Faceted Notation 6) Canon of Co-extensiveness

Q72. What does the Canon of Relativity and Uniformity emphasize in notational design?

A. Consistency of symbols across different classifications

B. The need for separate notations for every subject

C. The use of arbitrary symbols for simplicity

D. Avoiding overlap of class numbers

Answer: A. Consistency of symbols across different classifications

Explanation: The Canon of Relativity and Uniformity emphasizes that symbols used in notations should be consistent across different classifications to ensure clarity and uniformity.

Q73. Why might a classification system like Rider's International Classification (1961) face issues with homonyms?

A. It uses multiple symbols to represent subjects

B. It uses a limited number of symbols to denote many subjects

C. It changes symbols frequently

D. It uses descriptive terms rather than symbols

Answer: B. It uses a limited number of symbols to denote many subjects

Explanation: Rider's International Classification (1961) uses three alphabets to denote subjects, which can lead to homonyms as the same combination of symbols might represent multiple subjects.

Q74. According to Ranganathan, what is an ideal notation expected to achieve?

A. Complex and multi-layered classification

B. Simple and straightforward categorization

C. Denotation of one subject by one class number

D. Broad and inclusive categorization

Answer: C. Denotation of one subject by one class number

Explanation: Ranganathan envisioned an ideal notation that would denote one subject with one class number, though he acknowledged that achieving this level of precision is challenging and may lead to complexity.

Q75. What are the two types of notations in library classification?

A. Pure and Decimal

B. Pure and Mixed

C. Decimal and Mixed

D. Numeric and Alphabetic

Answer: B. Pure and Mixed

Explanation: The two types of notations in library classification are Pure and Mixed. Pure notation uses a single species of digits or symbols, while Mixed notation combines two or more species.

Q76. What is a primary disadvantage of pure notation in modern classification systems?

A. It is too complex to manage

B. It does not effectively handle the growing complexity and multidimensionality of knowledge

C. It is not compatible with digital systems

D. It is too broad and lacks specificity

Answer: B. It does not effectively handle the growing complexity and multidimensionality of knowledge

Explanation: Pure notation is less effective in handling the expansive, complex, and rapidly growing multidimensional universe of knowledge, which makes Mixed notation more suitable for modern classification systems.

Q77. How does mixed notation improve upon pure notation in terms of class number generation?

A. By using fewer symbols for more specificity

B. By producing shorter class numbers and having a wider base of symbols

C. By avoiding the use of numerals

D. By simplifying the notation system

Answer: B. By producing shorter class numbers and having a wider base of symbols

Explanation: Mixed notation has a wider base, which allows it to produce shorter class numbers and handle a more extensive range of subjects compared to pure notation.

Q78. What is the primary benefit of using decimal notation in library classification systems?

A. It simplifies the classification process

B. It allows for more complex and nuanced classifications

C. It avoids the use of alphabets and symbols

D. It produces longer class numbers

Answer: B. It allows for more complex and nuanced classifications

Explanation: Decimal notation is advantageous because it allows for complex and nuanced classifications by using decimal fractions to denote subjects and their subdivisions.

Q79. According to the text, what is the ideal level of mixed notation in a classification system?

A. Highly mixed with many unfamiliar symbols

B. Pure with only one species of digits

C. Moderately mixed with a balance of symbols and digits

D. Completely numeric without any letters

Answer: C. Moderately mixed with a balance of symbols and digits

Explanation: The ideal level of mixed notation is moderately mixed, as seen in systems like the Library of Congress Classification, which balances the use of symbols and digits effectively. Highly mixed notation with too many unfamiliar symbols can be problematic.

Q80. What role do decimal fractions play in modern classification systems?

A. They are used to create purely numerical class numbers

B. They are used to denote subjects and their subdivisions

C. They are used in place of all other symbols

D. They make classification systems more complex

Answer: B. They are used to denote subjects and their subdivisions

Explanation: Decimal fractions are used in modern classification systems to denote subjects and their subdivisions, allowing for detailed and organized classifications.

Q81. According to H.E. Bliss and Ranganathan, what is the key to effective library classification?

A. Be brief and not too detailed

B. Be detailed and not too brief

C. Be minute, be minute, be too minute

D. Be general and avoid specifics

Answer: C. Be minute, be minute, be too minute

Explanation: H.E. Bliss emphasized being minute but not overly detailed, while Ranganathan argued for being minute and even too detailed, suggesting a debate on the level of detail required in library classification.

Q82. What are the three types of qualities that notation should have according to the text?

A. Optional, Essential, and Scientific

B. Desirable, Essential, and Functional

C. Brief, Hierarchical, and Mixed

D. Technical, User-Friendly, and Universal

Answer: A. Optional, Essential, and Scientific

Explanation: Notation should possess qualities that are Optional or desirable, Essential and vital, and Scientific.

Q83. What is considered a desirable quality of notation in a print environment?

A. Lengthy and complex class numbers

B. Hierarchical and faceted notation

C. Brief and easy-to-write class numbers

D. Highly mixed notation with many symbols

Answer: C. Brief and easy-to-write class numbers

Explanation: In a print environment, brevity and ease of writing are desirable qualities for class numbers to fit on book spines and be easy to arrange on shelves.

Q84. How does the length of a class number affect its use in an automated library system?

A. It has no impact in an automated system

B. It is less important than in a print environment

C. It makes classification more complex

D. It requires manual adjustments

Answer: B. It is less important than in a print environment

Explanation: In automated library systems, the length of a class number is less of a concern compared to print environments, where brevity and ease of arrangement are crucial.

Q85. What is the role of hierarchical and faceted notation in library classification?

A. To ensure easy pronunciation of class numbers

B. To facilitate effective information retrieval

C. To make class numbers brief and simple

D. To avoid the use of mixed notation

Answer: B. To facilitate effective information retrieval

Explanation: Hierarchical and faceted notation with high recall and relevance is essential for effective information retrieval, as it helps organize and access information efficiently.

Q86. How does proportionate allocation of digits affect brevity in library classification notation?

A. It increases the length of class numbers

B. It leads to brief numbers by allocating digits based on subject dynamics

C. It has no impact on the brevity of class numbers

D. It complicates the classification process

Answer: B. It leads to brief numbers by allocating digits based on subject dynamics

Explanation: Proportionate allocation of digits means static subjects receive fewer digits while dynamic subjects get more, leading to shorter and more manageable class numbers.

Q87. What is a mnemonic notation and why is it desirable?

A. A notation that uses random digits to represent subjects

B. A notation that assigns unique digits to each subject without recurring patterns

C. A notation that uses the same digits for similar or recurring concepts, aiding memory

D. A notation that mixes alphabets and numerals in a complex way

Answer: C. A notation that uses the same digits for similar or recurring concepts, aiding memory

Explanation: Mnemonic notation helps users remember class numbers more easily by assigning the same or similar digits to recurring concepts.

Q88. Which of the following is an example of alphabetical mnemonic notation?

A. DDC's use of numbers for language and literature

B. CC's use of letters for anatomy and diseases

C. LCC's use of initial letters for general works and collections

D. UDC's use of decimal fractions for subjects

Answer: C. LCC's use of initial letters for general works and collections

Explanation: The Library of Congress Classification (LCC) uses alphabetical mnemonics where initial letters denote different categories, such as "A" for General Works and "AE" for General Encyclopedias.

Q89. What does seminal mnemonic notation denote and provide an example?

A. It denotes concepts by their inherent number, like 1 for unity or 4 for diseases

B. It uses random digits for each concept without inherent meaning

C. It assigns alphabetical codes to subjects based on their characteristics

D. It mixes numerical and alphabetical symbols for a single concept

Answer: A. It denotes concepts by their inherent number, like 1 for unity or 4 for diseases

Explanation: Seminal mnemonic notation uses inherent numbers to represent fundamental concepts, such as using "1" for unity and "4" for social pathology or diseases.

Q90. Which classification system is mentioned as highly mnemonic and provides examples of mnemonic notation?

A. Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) and Colon Classification (CC)

B. Library of Congress Classification (LCC) and Universal Decimal Classification (UDC)

C. Universal Decimal Classification (UDC) and Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC)

D. Colon Classification (CC) and Library of Congress Classification (LCC)

Answer: A. Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) and Colon Classification (CC)

Explanation: Both DDC and CC are described as highly mnemonic systems, using recurring digits to represent similar concepts.

Q91. What does hospitality in notation refer to in the context of library classification systems?

A. The ability of a notation system to handle a large number of subjects without revision

B. The capacity to accommodate new subjects at their proper places without disturbing existing sequences

C. The flexibility to use various symbols for the same subject

D. The ease of understanding and using a classification system by new users

Answer: B. The capacity to accommodate new subjects at their proper places without disturbing existing sequences

Explanation: Hospitality in notation means the ability to integrate new subjects into a classification system without disrupting the order of existing subjects.

Q92. How does hospitality by classifiers differ from hospitality by classificationists?

A. Hospitality by classifiers involves adding new subjects to a system, while hospitality by classificationists involves updating the notation in new editions.

B. Hospitality by classifiers ensures the system can handle multiple languages, while hospitality by classificationists ensures new subjects are added efficiently.

C. Hospitality by classifiers focuses on user training, while hospitality by classificationists focuses on the design of the notation system.

D. Hospitality by classifiers is about revising the entire system, while hospitality by classificationists involves ensuring the system remains static.

Answer: A. Hospitality by classifiers involves adding new subjects to a system, while hospitality by classificationists involves updating the notation in new editions.

Explanation: Hospitality by classifiers refers to the flexibility in accommodating new subjects within the current system, while hospitality by classificationists pertains to the revision and updating of the system in new editions to include new subjects.

Q93. Why is hospitality considered an essential quality of a classification system?

A. It ensures that the classification system remains unchanged over time.

B. It allows the system to expand and include new subjects as knowledge grows, without disrupting the existing structure.

C. It simplifies the notation by using fewer symbols.

D. It helps in reducing the complexity of the classification system.

Answer: B. It allows the system to expand and include new subjects as knowledge grows, without disrupting the existing structure.

Explanation: Hospitality ensures that as new subjects emerge, they can be integrated into the classification system without disturbing the existing arrangement, accommodating the growth of knowledge.

Q94. What example illustrates the concept of hospitality in the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) system?

A. The use of a fixed number of pages throughout its editions

B. The expansion from 44 pages in DDC-1 (1876) to over 3000 pages in DDC-22 (2003)

C. The use of a single notation system for all subjects

D. The elimination of old subjects in new editions

Answer: B. The expansion from 44 pages in DDC-1 (1876) to over 3000 pages in DDC-22 (2003)

Explanation: The growth from 44 pages to over 3000 pages in different editions of DDC illustrates its capacity for hospitality, accommodating new subjects over time without disrupting the existing classification.

Q95. What role does hospitality play in the revision of classification systems in new editions?

A. It limits the inclusion of new subjects to avoid complexity.

B. It ensures that new subjects are placed correctly within the existing structure.

C. It eliminates outdated subjects to make room for new ones.

D. It simplifies the existing notation to accommodate new subjects.

Answer: B. It ensures that new subjects are placed correctly within the existing structure.

Explanation: Hospitality in new editions involves updating the classification system to include new subjects while maintaining the proper order and structure of existing subjects.

Q96. What is the recommended approach for classifiers when a new subject does not have a designated number in the classification schedules?

A. Create a local number for the new subject immediately.

B. Wait for a new edition of the classification system to include the subject.

C. Place the new subject in a broader class temporarily.

D. Disregard the new subject until a new classification system is available.

Answer: C. Place the new subject in a broader class temporarily.

Explanation: When a new subject does not have a designated number, classifiers are advised to temporarily place it within a broader class and wait for the inclusion of the subject in a new edition of the classification system.

Q97. Which of the following devices is NOT one of Ranganathan's provisions for synthesizing a class number for a new subject?

A. Subject Device

B. Chronological Device

C. Geographical Device

D. Numeric Device

Answer: D. Numeric Device

Explanation: Ranganathan's provisions for synthesizing class numbers include the Subject, Chronological, Geographical, and Super-imposition Devices, but not a Numeric Device.

Q98. What does Ranganathan's claim of his system being "self-perpetuating" imply about its ability to classify new knowledge?

A. The system can classify new knowledge without the need for any updates.

B. The system requires continuous intervention from classificationists to update.

C. The system can classify new knowledge using its existing devices and methods without immediate intervention from the classificationists.

D. The system automatically updates itself with new subjects without manual input.

Answer: C. The system can classify new knowledge using its existing devices and methods without immediate intervention from the classificationists.

Explanation: Ranganathan's claim of a "self-perpetuating" system implies that the system is designed to classify new knowledge using existing devices and methods, potentially without immediate intervention from classificationists.

Q99. How do classificationists ensure that new subjects are properly accommodated in new editions of a classification system?

A. By creating new classification schedules from scratch for each new subject.

B. By making conceptual, structural, and mechanical provisions for new subjects.

C. By ignoring new subjects until a significant number are available.

D. By eliminating old subjects to make room for new ones.

Answer: B. By making conceptual, structural, and mechanical provisions for new subjects.

Explanation: Classificationists make provisions in the system's conceptual, structural, and mechanical design to accommodate new subjects properly in new editions.

Q100. What is a key feature of Ranganathan's Colon Classification system that relates to its hospitality for new subjects?

A. It uses a pure notation system.

B. It has a high degree of mixed notation with six different species.

C. It relies solely on alphabetical devices for notation.

D. It avoids any form of notation for new subjects.

Answer: B. It has a high degree of mixed notation with six different species.

Explanation: The Colon Classification system features a highly mixed notation with six different species, demonstrating its capacity for hospitality and adaptability to new subjects.

Q101. What is the purpose of using the Gap device in library classification systems?

A. To remove outdated subjects from the classification system.

B. To leave vacant positions for future and unborn subjects.

C. To categorize all subjects under a single class.

D. To merge similar subjects into broader categories.

Answer: B. To leave vacant positions for future and unborn subjects.

Explanation: The Gap device is used to leave vacant positions in the classification system that can be filled with new and future subjects.

Q102. In which classification system are vacant positions such as U3 and U7 used to accommodate new topics in Geography?

A. Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC)

B. Library of Congress Classification (LCC)

C. Colon Classification (CC)

D. Universal Decimal Classification (UDC)

Answer: C. Colon Classification (CC)

Explanation: In Colon Classification, vacant positions such as U3 and U7 are used to accommodate new topics in Geography.

Q103. Which of the following is a limitation of the Gap device in classification systems?

A. It always provides a rightful place for new subjects.

B. It ensures that no vacant places remain unfilled for long.

C. It may lead to new subjects being misplaced due to lack of space in the appropriate location.

D. It removes the need for periodic updates to the classification system.

Answer: C. It may lead to new subjects being misplaced due to lack of space in the appropriate location.

Explanation: The Gap device may cause new subjects to be misplaced if there is no vacant place available in the desired location, leading to distortion in the structure of knowledge.

Q104. How does the DDC handle vacancies for future subjects?

A. By eliminating gaps and reassigning numbers as new subjects emerge.

B. By creating new classes to accommodate future subjects.

C. By leaving vacant positions in certain numbers, such as 504, 517, and 524, to be filled in the future.

D. By using only a single number to represent all new subjects.

Answer: C. By leaving vacant positions in certain numbers, such as 504, 517, and 524, to be filled in the future.

Explanation: The DDC uses vacant positions in certain numbers to accommodate future subjects, such as in numbers 504, 517, and 524.

Q105. Why might the Gap device not be a complete solution for accommodating new subjects in classification systems?

A. It guarantees an accurate and updated classification structure.

B. It is unable to predict and fill gaps with future subjects effectively.

C. It eliminates the need for further classification updates.

D. It ensures that no new subjects are introduced into the system.

Answer: B. It is unable to predict and fill gaps with future subjects effectively.

Explanation: The Gap device does not always ensure that new subjects are placed appropriately and may lead to distortions in the structure or mapping of knowledge due to unfilled gaps or misplaced subjects.

Q106. What is the purpose of using emptying digits such as T, V, and X in library classification systems?

A. To remove outdated subjects from the classification system.

B. To create new classes for completely unrelated subjects.

C. To empty a preceding digit of its meaning while retaining its ordinal value, allowing for the insertion of new subjects.

D. To merge multiple subjects into a single class.

Answer: C. To empty a preceding digit of its meaning while retaining its ordinal value, allowing for the insertion of new subjects.

Explanation: Emptying digits like T, V, and X are used to empty a preceding digit of its meaning but keep its ordinal value, enabling the addition of new subjects at appropriate places.

Q107. How is the emptying digit X used in the Colon Classification (CC) system?

A. To create a new class for subjects unrelated to existing categories.

B. To denote subjects by assigning random numbers.

C. To empty the preceding digit of its meaning and allow new subjects to be inserted at the proper place in the array.

D. To combine multiple subjects into a single class number.

Answer: C. To empty the preceding digit of its meaning and allow new subjects to be inserted at the proper place in the array.

Explanation: In the CC system, the emptying digit X is used to empty the preceding digit of its meaning, facilitating the insertion of new subjects, such as in the example of Animal Husbandry being placed between Zoology and Medicine.

Q108. In the provided example, how does the emptying digit T affect the classification of Nepal in the DDC?

A. It changes the classification of India to include Nepal.

B. It creates a new class for Nepal by emptying the preceding digit and inserting it at the appropriate position.

C. It combines the subjects of India and Nepal into a single class.

D. It removes the subject of Nepal from the classification system.

Answer: B. It creates a new class for Nepal by emptying the preceding digit and inserting it at the appropriate position.

Explanation: The emptying digit T is used to create a new class for Nepal by emptying the preceding digit and allowing it to be inserted between existing classes, such as the example of India and Nepal in the DDC.

Q109. What analogy is used to describe the function of emptying digits in the provided text?

A. They are like the King Bali from the Ramayana who could sack the power of his enemies.

B. They are like a new ruler taking over an entire kingdom.

C. They are like removing a layer of an onion to reach the core.

D. They are like a magician pulling a rabbit out of a hat.

Answer: A. They are like the King Bali from the Ramayana who could sack the power of his enemies.

Explanation: The analogy of King Bali is used to illustrate how emptying digits can effectively remove the preceding digit's meaning, allowing for new subjects to be inserted appropriately, similar to how King Bali could diminish the power of his enemies.

Q110. What is the role of Empty-Empty digits such as U, W, and Y in the Colon Classification (CC) system?

A. To create new subject categories that are unrelated to existing ones.

B. To remove the meaning of preceding digits and create space for additional new subjects.

C. To combine multiple subject areas into a single classification number.

D. To simplify the existing classification system by reducing the number of digits used.

Answer: B. To remove the meaning of preceding digits and create space for additional new subjects.

Explanation: Empty-Empty digits like U, W, and Y are used in the CC system to make the preceding digits empty of meaning, allowing for the interpolation of new co-ordinate subjects at appropriate places in the classification array.

Q111. How does the use of Empty-Empty digits impact the classification of new subjects in the Colon Classification system?

A. It combines new subjects with existing ones into a single classification number.

B. It provides a method to insert new subjects into existing categories without disrupting the current order.

C. It removes all previous classifications to make space for new subjects.

D. It creates a new category for each subject, disregarding existing classifications.

Answer: B. It provides a method to insert new subjects into existing categories without disrupting the current order.

Explanation: The use of Empty-Empty digits allows for the insertion of new co-ordinate subjects into existing classifications without disturbing the current arrangement, effectively making space for additional subjects.

Q112. In the given example of the Colon Classification system, how is the digit Y used to organize subjects?

A. It denotes unrelated subjects by assigning random numbers.

B. It allows for the insertion of new subjects into an existing classification sequence by making preceding digits empty.

C. It simplifies existing subjects by combining them into fewer categories.

D. It replaces existing subject classifications with new ones.

Answer: B. It allows for the insertion of new subjects into an existing classification sequence by making preceding digits empty.

Explanation: The digit Y in the provided example is used to insert new subjects like Sociometry, Demography, and Cyber Culture into the classification sequence by making preceding digits empty, allowing for more precise organization.

Q113. What is the advantage of using Empty-Empty digits in terms of subject classification?

A. They provide a permanent solution for all future classification needs.

B. They ensure that all new subjects are classified under existing categories without creating new ones.

C. They allow for almost unlimited interpolation of new subjects in the classification system.

D. They consolidate multiple subjects into a single classification number.

Answer: C. They allow for almost unlimited interpolation of new subjects in the classification system.

Explanation: Empty-Empty digits facilitate the interpolation of a wide range of new subjects into the existing classification system, offering flexibility and adaptability for future needs.

1. What marked the beginning of the modern history of library classification?

A. The publication of Ranganathan's Colon Classification

B. The introduction of the Universal Decimal Classification

C. The publication of Dewey's system

D. The development of the Library of Congress Classification

Answer: C. The publication of Dewey's system

Explanation: Modern library classification began with the publication of Dewey's system in 1876, which quickly addressed many issues related to shelf arrangement and book display.

2. Which classification system was introduced in 1895 and is known for its extensive use of decimal notation?

A. Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC)

B. C.A. Cutter's Expansive Classification

C. Universal Decimal Classification (UDC)

D. Library of Congress Classification (LCC)

Answer: C. Universal Decimal Classification (UDC)

Explanation: The Universal Decimal Classification (UDC), introduced in 1895, is known for its extensive use of decimal notation and has been widely used in libraries worldwide.

3. Who developed the Expansive Classification system, and when was it introduced?

A. J.D. Brown, 1906

B. C.A. Cutter, 1893

C. Ranganathan, 1933

D. Bliss, 1940

Answer: B. C.A. Cutter, 1893

Explanation: C.A. Cutter developed the Expansive Classification system, which was introduced in 1893 as an alternative to the Dewey Decimal Classification.

4. What is the significance of the Library of Congress Classification (LCC), and when was it introduced?

A. It was introduced in 1906 and is known for its use of decimal notation.

B. It was introduced in 1903 and is significant for its use of a combination of letters and numbers.

C. It was introduced in 1933 and focuses on a faceted approach to classification.

D. It was introduced in 1940 and is known for its use of subject-specific categories.

Answer: B. It was introduced in 1903 and is significant for its use of a combination of letters and numbers.

Explanation: The Library of Congress Classification (LCC), introduced in 1903, uses a combination of letters and numbers to categorize subjects and is significant for its detailed and systematic approach.

5. What was Ranganathan's contribution to library classification, and when was his system introduced?

A. The Expansive Classification, introduced in 1893

B. The Bibliographic Classification, introduced in 1940

C. The Colon Classification (CC), introduced in 1933

D. The International Classification, introduced in 1961

Answer: C. The Colon Classification (CC), introduced in 1933

Explanation: Ranganathan's Colon Classification (CC), introduced in 1933, is known for its innovative and systematic approach to library classification.

6. Which classification system is known for its use of mixed notation and was introduced in 1961?

A. Broad System of Ordering (BSO)

B. Bibliographic Classification, 2nd ed. (BC)

C. Rider's International Classification (IC)

D. Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC)

Answer: C. Rider's International Classification (IC)

Explanation: Rider's International Classification (IC), introduced in 1961, is known for its use of mixed notation and aims to provide a comprehensive system for organizing knowledge.

7. What was the main aim of the Broad System of Ordering (BSO) introduced in 1978?

A. To refine the existing Dewey Decimal Classification system

B. To develop a new bibliographic classification system

C. To provide a comprehensive and flexible system for organizing knowledge

D. To replace the Library of Congress Classification system

Answer: C. To provide a comprehensive and flexible system for organizing knowledge

Explanation: The Broad System of Ordering (BSO), introduced in 1978, aimed to provide a comprehensive and flexible system for organizing knowledge in libraries.

8. What notable feature is associated with the Bibliographic Classification, 2nd ed. (BC), introduced in 1977?

A. It introduced a new classification scheme for non-book materials.

B. It updated the earlier Bibliographic Classification system with new features.

C. It incorporated digital technologies into the classification system.

D. It focused on the classification of scientific subjects only.

Answer: B. It updated the earlier Bibliographic Classification system with new features.

Explanation: The Bibliographic Classification, 2nd ed. (BC), introduced in 1977, updated the earlier system with new features to improve its effectiveness and applicability.

9. What is the purpose of main classes in a library classification system?

A. To organize knowledge into discrete and non-overlapping categories

B. To provide a secondary level of division within existing classes

C. To combine multiple disciplines into a single category

D. To list all possible subjects in alphabetical order

Answer: A. To organize knowledge into discrete and non-overlapping categories

Explanation: Main classes in a library classification system are used to organize knowledge into discrete and non-overlapping categories, forming the primary facet of the classification structure.

10. How does the scope and number of main classes differ among classification systems?

A. They remain constant across all classification systems.

B. They are standardized and do not change over time.

C. They vary from system to system and can change over time.

D. They are determined by the alphabetical order of subjects.

Answer: C. They vary from system to system and can change over time.

Explanation: The scope and number of main classes vary from one classification system to another and can also change over time as new

knowledge emerges and classifications are updated.

11. In which edition of the Colon Classification (CC) did Astronomy become an independent main class?

A. Sixth edition (1963)

B. Seventh edition (1987)

C. Eighth edition (1990)

D. Ninth edition (2000)

Answer: B. Seventh edition (1987)

Explanation: In the Colon Classification (CC), Astronomy gained the status of an independent main class in the seventh edition (1987), whereas it was previously considered a part of Mathematics in the sixth edition (1963).

12. What defines a main class in the context of library classification?

A. A broad, general category that includes multiple disciplines

B. A homogenous, coherent, and interrelated area of knowledge

C. A specific subject within a larger category

D. A secondary level of classification used for detailed topics

Answer: B. A homogenous, coherent, and interrelated area of knowledge

Explanation: A main class is defined as a homogenous, coherent, and interrelated area of knowledge that is understandable to an ordinary intellectual being, forming the basic facet of the classification system.

13. How did the status of smaller topics change between the sixth and seventh editions of the Colon Classification?

A. Smaller topics were removed entirely in the seventh edition.

B. Smaller topics gained the status of main classes in the seventh edition.

C. Smaller topics were consolidated into fewer categories in the seventh edition.

D. Smaller topics were combined into larger categories in the seventh edition.

Answer: B. Smaller topics gained the status of main classes in the seventh edition.

Explanation: In the transition from the sixth edition (1963) to the seventh edition (1987) of the Colon Classification, many smaller topics were elevated to the status of main classes, reflecting an expansion and refinement of the classification system.

14. What is the maximum number of main classes in the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) system?

A. 10

B. 9

C. 8

D. 12

Answer: B. 10

Explanation: The Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) system uses a maximum of 10 main classes, numbered from 000 to 900.

15. How are the main classes of the DDC organized?

A. Based on historical periods

B. According to the three mental faculties of memory, imagination, and reason

C. By the alphabetical order of subjects

D. Using a random allocation of topics

Answer: B. According to the three mental faculties of memory, imagination, and reason

Explanation: The main classes of the DDC are organized based on Francis Bacon's three mental faculties: memory (900), imagination (700/800), and reason (100/600).

16. In the Dewey Decimal Classification, how are each of the main classes further divided?

A. Into five primary sections

B. Into ten divisions, and each division is further divided into ten sections

C. Into two main categories and each category into five subcategories

D. Into four major areas with specific topics

Answer: B. Into ten divisions, and each division is further divided into ten sections

Explanation: In the Dewey Decimal Classification, each main class is divided into ten divisions, and each division is further subdivided into ten sections.

17. What is the primary flaw in the DDC's structure as mentioned?

A. Overemphasis on technology

B. The artificial division by 10 at every stage and unjustified separations between certain disciplines

C. Lack of coverage for emerging scientific topics

D. Inadequate representation of historical subjects

Answer: B. The artificial division by 10 at every stage and unjustified separations between certain disciplines

Explanation: The DDC's structure is criticized for its artificial division by 10 at each stage and the unjustified separations between disciplines, such as Linguistics and Literature.

18. How does the DDC address new and emerging topics?

A. By creating entirely new main classes

B. By revising existing divisions and sections to accommodate them

C. By leaving gaps for future topics

D. By using an index to cover new subjects

Answer: B. By revising existing divisions and sections to accommodate them

Explanation: The DDC addresses new and emerging topics by revising existing divisions and sections, rather than creating entirely new main classes or using gaps.

19. What is a major difference between UDC and DDC regarding the main classes?

A. UDC does not use decimal notation

B. UDC merges Linguistics with Literature and uses vacant classes for new subjects

C. UDC only uses alphabetical notation for main classes

D. UDC has fewer main classes than DDC

Answer: B. UDC merges Linguistics with Literature and uses vacant classes for new subjects

Explanation: The UDC merges Linguistics with Literature and keeps some classes vacant for new subjects, whereas DDC does not use this approach.

20. How many main classes are there in the Library of Congress Classification (LCC)?

A. 10

B. 15

C. 21

D. 25

Answer: C. 21

Explanation: The Library of Congress Classification (LCC) consists of 21 main classes, denoted by the letters A to Z.

21. Which system is the basis for the Library of Congress Classification (LCC)?

A. Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC)

B. Expansive Classification (EC) by C.A. Cutter

C. Universal Decimal Classification (UDC)

D. Colon Classification (CC) by Ranganathan

Answer: B. Expansive Classification (EC) by C.A. Cutter

Explanation: The Library of Congress Classification (LCC) is based on the Expansive Classification (EC) developed by C.A. Cutter.

22. Which main class in the Library of Congress Classification (LCC) covers Geography and Anthropology?

A. A

B. B

C. G

D. P

Answer: C. G

Explanation: In the Library of Congress Classification (LCC), Geography and Anthropology are covered under the main class denoted by the letter G.

23. How does the UDC address the criticism faced by the DDC?

A. By eliminating decimal notation entirely

B. By merging certain classes and using vacant positions for future expansion

C. By reducing the number of main classes

D. By adopting a purely alphabetical system

Answer: B. By merging certain classes and using vacant positions for future expansion

Explanation: The UDC addresses the criticisms faced by the DDC by merging certain classes, such as Linguistics with Literature, and using vacant positions to accommodate new subjects.

24. Which letters have been kept vacant in the Universal Decimal Classification (UDC) for future expansion?

A. A, B, C, D, E

B. I, O, W, X, Y

C. M, N, P, Q, R

D. G, H, J, K, L

Answer: B. I, O, W, X, Y

Explanation: In the Universal Decimal Classification (UDC), the letters I, O, W, X, and Y have been kept vacant for future expansion.

25. How does the Universal Decimal Classification (UDC) compare to other classification systems in terms of its structure?

A. It uses only decimal notation for main classes

B. It is an enumerative system with depth schedules and includes a series of detailed volumes

C. It adopts a purely alphabetical system for all classes

D. It eliminates the need for any future expansions

Answer: B. It is an enumerative system with depth schedules and includes a series of detailed volumes

Explanation: The Universal Decimal Classification (UDC) is described as an enumerative system with depth schedules and has been expanded into 51 volumes, offering detailed classifications.

26. How are the main classes further divided in the Universal Decimal Classification (UDC)?

A. By using decimal points

B. By a second set of alphabetical letters

C. By a combination of Roman numerals and symbols

D. By a numerical system only

Answer: B. By a second set of alphabetical letters

Explanation: In the Universal Decimal Classification (UDC), the main classes are further divided by a second set of alphabetical letters, such as Q for Science, QA for Mathematics, QB for Astronomy, and so on.

27. What numerical system does the Universal Decimal Classification (UDC) use for subdivisions?

A. Roman numerals

B. Arithmetic numerals

C. Decimal notation

D. Binary system

Answer: B. Arithmetic numerals

Explanation: The Universal Decimal Classification (UDC) uses arithmetic numerals for subdivisions, as opposed to the decimal notation used in other systems.

28. What makes the Universal Decimal Classification (UDC) notable as a shelf classification system?

A. Its use of a purely alphabetical system

B. Its depth and breadth of classification in 51 volumes

C. Its limited number of main classes

D. Its absence of future expansion provisions

Answer: B. Its depth and breadth of classification in 51 volumes

Explanation: The Universal Decimal Classification (UDC) is notable as a shelf classification system due to its depth and breadth, which are covered in 51 detailed volumes.

29. What were the primary traditional disciplines used by S.R. Ranganathan in the Colon Classification (CC) system?

A. Social Sciences, Humanities, Engineering

B. Sciences, Humanities, Social Sciences

C. Mathematics, Technology, Literature

D. Medicine, Geography, History

Answer: B. Sciences, Humanities, Social Sciences

Explanation: S.R. Ranganathan's Colon Classification (CC) is organized based on traditional disciplines, which are Sciences, Humanities, and Social Sciences, following their evolutionary order.

30. How are the main classes organized in the Colon Classification (CC)?

A. Based on modern technological advancements

B. In the order of their evolution, using traditional disciplines

C. By using only alphabetical letters

D. Exclusively through numerical systems

Answer: B. In the order of their evolution, using traditional disciplines

Explanation: In the Colon Classification (CC), the main classes are organized based on traditional disciplines in the order of their evolution: Sciences, Humanities, and Social Sciences.

31. Which main class in the Colon Classification (CC) covers both Mathematics and Engineering?

A. A/B

B. C/D

C. E/F

D. G/H

Answer: A. A/B

Explanation: In the Colon Classification (CC), the main class A/B covers Science and Mathematics, while the classes C/D cover Physics and Engineering.

32. What does the main class E/F in the Colon Classification (CC) include?

A. Physics and Engineering

B. Chemistry and Technology

C. Biology and Geology

D. Botany and Agriculture

Answer: B. Chemistry and Technology

Explanation: In the Colon Classification (CC), the main class E/F is designated for Chemistry and Technology.

33. Which main class in the Colon Classification (CC) addresses Literature and Languages?

A. I/J/K

B. O/P

C. Q/R

D. W/X

Answer: B. O/P

Explanation: The main class O/P in the Colon Classification (CC) is dedicated to Literature and Languages.

34. What unique main class is interposed between M and N in the Colon Classification (CC) system?

A. Mysticism

B. Philosophy

C. Sociology

D. History

Answer: A. Mysticism

Explanation: In the Colon Classification (CC) system, a unique main class called Mysticism is interposed between M (Useful Arts) and N (Fine Arts).

35. How does the Colon Classification (CC) system arrange Sciences and Technology?

A. Randomly

B. In order of their increasing concreteness

C. Based on their historical development

D. By alphabetical order

Answer: B. In order of their increasing concreteness

Explanation: In the Colon Classification (CC) system, Sciences and Technology are arranged in order of their increasing concreteness, with M (Useful Arts) being the most concrete.

36. What does the Principle of Dependency, as applied in the Colon Classification (CC), suggest?

A. Applications precede theory

B. Theory precedes applications

C. Sciences are more concrete than humanities

D. Social Sciences are arranged by their laws

Answer: B. Theory precedes applications

Explanation: The Principle of Dependency in the Colon Classification (CC) suggests that theory precedes applications, such as I (Botany) preceding J (Agriculture).

37. How are the Humanities arranged in the Colon Classification (CC)?

A. By the order of increasing concreteness

B. By the order of increasing richness of subject contents

C. By alphabetical order

D. By historical importance

Answer: B. By the order of increasing richness of subject contents

Explanation: In the Colon Classification (CC) system, the Humanities are arranged in order of increasing richness of subject contents.

38. According to the Colon Classification (CC) system, how are Social Sciences arranged?

A. By increasing historical significance

B. By increasing richness of subject contents

C. By increasing artificiality of their laws

D. By their theoretical framework

Answer: C. By increasing artificiality of their laws

Explanation: The Colon Classification (CC) system arranges Social Sciences in the order of increasing artificiality of their laws, with Z (Civil Laws) being considered purely artificial and frequently changing.

39. What pedagogical pattern does Ranganathan call the arrangement of books on shelves in the Colon Classification (CC)?

A. A-Z Pattern

B. APUPA Pattern

C. Sequential Pattern

D. Logical Sequence

Answer: B. APUPA Pattern

Explanation: Ranganathan refers to the arrangement of books on shelves in the Colon Classification (CC) as the APUPA pattern, which is a pedagogical order.

40. How does the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) use Indo-Arabic decimal notation?

A. To denote subjects and their further subdivisions

B. As a mathematical tool

C. To replace alphabetical notation

D. To assign colors to subjects

Answer: A. To denote subjects and their further subdivisions

Explanation: The DDC uses Indo-Arabic decimal notation to denote subjects and their further subdivisions. A dot is used after the third digit purely as a partitioning device.

41. What is the purpose of the dot in the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) notation?

A. To indicate mathematical value

B. To serve as a partitioning device

C. To assign a semantic meaning

D. To represent hierarchical relationships

Answer: B. To serve as a partitioning device

Explanation: In the DDC notation, a dot is used after the third digit solely as a partitioning device and has no mathematical or semantic value.

42. What are some strengths of the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC)?

A. Complexity and flexibility

B. Use of complex symbols

C. Simplicity and use of internationally recognized Indo-Arabic numerals

D. Advanced hierarchical and faceted notation

Answer: C. Simplicity and use of internationally recognized Indo-Arabic numerals

Explanation: The DDC's strengths lie in its simplicity and the use of internationally recognized Indo-Arabic numerals.

43. How does the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) handle subject allocation?

A. By evenly distributing notation among subjects

B. By giving dynamic subjects more space than static subjects

C. By allocating the same space to both dynamic and static subjects due to historical reasons

D. By using alphabetical notation

Answer: C. By allocating the same space to both dynamic and static subjects due to historical reasons

Explanation: The DDC's allocation of notation among subjects can be faulty due to historical reasons, such as giving the same space to dynamic subjects like technology and static subjects like religion.

44. What is a major limitation of the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC)?

A. Its use of non-hierarchical notation

B. Its poor hospitality with only gaps and decimal fraction devices

C. Its complex and non-mnemonical notation

D. Its lack of international recognition

Answer: B. Its poor hospitality with only gaps and decimal fraction devices

Explanation: The DDC's hospitality is considered poor due to its reliance on gaps and decimal fraction devices, which do not effectively accommodate new subjects.

45. How does the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) use Indo-Arabic decimal notation?

A. To denote subjects and their further subdivisions

B. As a mathematical tool

C. To replace alphabetical notation

D. To assign colors to subjects

Answer: A. To denote subjects and their further subdivisions

Explanation: The DDC uses Indo-Arabic decimal notation to denote subjects and their further subdivisions. A dot is placed after the third digit solely as a partitioning device.

46. What is the purpose of the dot in DDC notation?

A. To indicate mathematical value

B. To serve as a partitioning device

C. To assign a semantic meaning

D. To represent hierarchical relationships

Answer: B. To serve as a partitioning device

Explanation: The dot in DDC notation is used after the third digit purely as a partitioning device and does not carry mathematical or semantic value.

47. What are some strengths of the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC)?

A. Complexity and flexibility

B. Use of complex symbols

C. Simplicity and internationally recognized Indo-Arabic numerals

D. Advanced hierarchical and faceted notation

Answer: C. Simplicity and internationally recognized Indo-Arabic numerals

Explanation: The DDC's strengths lie in its simplicity and the use of internationally recognized Indo-Arabic numerals.

48. What is a major limitation of the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC)?

A. Its use of non-hierarchical notation

B. Its poor hospitality with only gaps and decimal fraction devices

C. Its complex and non-mnemonical notation

D. Its lack of international recognition

Answer: B. Its poor hospitality with only gaps and decimal fraction devices

Explanation: The DDC's hospitality is considered poor due to its reliance on gaps and decimal fraction devices, which do not effectively accommodate new subjects.

49. How does the Universal Decimal Classification (UDC) extend the features of the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC)?

A. By using only alphabetical notation

B. By applying additional auxiliaries and synthesis for number building

C. By removing hierarchical divisions

D. By using purely alphabetical symbols

Answer: B. By applying additional auxiliaries and synthesis for number building

Explanation: The UDC builds on the DDC by using additional auxiliaries and synthesis for number building, making it more flexible and hospitable to new subjects.

50. What function does the "+" symbol serve in UDC notation?

A. Coordination

B. Consecutive extension

C. Simple relation

D. Subgroup

Answer: A. Coordination

Explanation: In UDC notation, the "+" symbol is used for coordination, as in combining subjects like Library Science and Journalism (02+07).

51. How does the "/" symbol function in UDC notation?

A. Coordination

B. Consecutive extension

C. Simple relation

D. Order-fixing

Answer: B. Consecutive extension

Explanation: The "/" symbol in UDC notation indicates consecutive extension, such as combining Science & Technology (5/6).

52. What does the ":" symbol represent in UDC notation?

A. Coordination

B. Consecutive extension

C. Simple relation

D. Subgroup

Answer: C. Simple relation

Explanation: The ":" symbol in UDC notation denotes a simple relation between subjects, like Library Science & Journalism (02:07).

53. What is the purpose of the "…" symbol in UDC notation?

A. Ethnic grouping and nationality

B. Time

C. Coordination

D. Materials

Answer: B. Time

Explanation: The "…" symbol in UDC notation is used to represent time, such as Library Science in the 21st Century (02 '20').

54. How does the "[…]" symbol function in UDC notation?

A. Coordination

B. Consecutive extension

C. Subgroup

D. Order-fixing

Answer: C. Subgroup

Explanation: The "[…]" symbol in UDC notation indicates a subgroup, such as Dictionary of Philosophy & Religion ([1+2]03).

55. What does the "=" symbol represent in UDC notation?

A. Ethnic grouping and nationality

B. Coordination

C. Place

D. Simple relation

Answer: C. Place

Explanation: The "=" symbol in UDC notation denotes place, such as Library Science in Russian (02=161.1).

56. What function does the "-" symbol serve in UDC notation?

A. Persons

B. Materials

C. Time

D. Order-fixing

Answer: B. Materials

Explanation: The "-" symbol in UDC notation is used to represent materials, such as Linoleum floor coverings (645.13-037.87).

57. What problem arises with UDC notation in computer-aided arrangement?

A. Ordinal value of symbols is too flexible

B. Complexity is too simple

C. Ordinal value of punctuation marks conflicts with ASCII

D. Notation is too straightforward

Answer: C. Ordinal value of punctuation marks conflicts with ASCII

Explanation: In computer-aided arrangement, the ordinal value of punctuation marks in UDC notation conflicts with the ASCII standard.

58. Why is the complexity of UDC notation considered acceptable?

A. It simplifies the classification process

B. It is a bibliographic classification system for bibliographies and information centers

C. It reduces the number of symbols needed

D. It avoids conflicts with computer standards

Answer: B. It is a bibliographic classification system for bibliographies and information centers

Explanation: The complexity of UDC notation is considered acceptable because it serves the purpose of a bibliographic classification system used in bibliographies and information centers.

59. How does the Library of Congress Classification (LCC) denote its main classes?

A. Using Arabic numerals

B. Using two Roman capitals

C. Using decimal notation

D. Using single letters

Answer: B. Using two Roman capitals

Explanation: The LCC uses two Roman capitals to denote its main classes.

60. What is a notable feature of the LCC's notation system?

A. It has a fixed base from A/Z

B. It uses only alphabetical subdivisions

C. It excludes the use of any gaps

D. It relies solely on decimal notation

Answer: A. It has a fixed base from A/Z

Explanation: The LCC has a large base from A/Z, and further divisions such as AA to VZ, providing significant capacity for future expansions.

61. What has LCC started using recently to accommodate new subjects?

A. Alphanumeric symbols

B. Decimal extension

C. Gaps in the notation

D. Only alphabetical subdivisions

Answer: B. Decimal extension

Explanation: To accommodate new subjects where there are no gaps, the LCC has recently started using decimal extension.

62. What does the notation "QD 149" represent in LCC?

A. General works

B. Inorganic chemistry

C. Chemistry by region

D. Chemistry in a specific country

Answer: B. Inorganic chemistry

Explanation: In LCC notation, "QD 149" represents Inorganic Chemistry.

63. How does the LCC handle additional specificity within its main classes?

A. By adding decimal points

B. By using alphabetical subdivisions

C. By creating new main classes

D. By merging existing classes

Answer: B. By using alphabetical subdivisions

Explanation: The LCC handles additional specificity within its main classes by using alphabetical subdivisions, such as QD 149.7 A-Z for works by country.

64. What is the limitation of the LCC notation system?

A. It is too mnemonic

B. It lacks capacity for future expansion

C. It is not mnemonic except for the alphabetical subdivisions

D. It is overly simplified

Answer: C. It is not mnemonic except for the alphabetical subdivisions

Explanation: The LCC notation system is not mnemonic except for the alphabetical subdivisions, which can be a limitation.

65. What is a notable feature of the notation in the Colon Classification (CC)?

A. It is the simplest library notation system.

B. It includes 74 digits belonging to six species.

C. It uses only decimal notation.

D. It lacks mnemonic devices.

Answer: B. It includes 74 digits belonging to six species.

Explanation: The notation of CC comprises 74 digits belonging to six different species, making it a comprehensive system.

66. What types of digits are included in the CC notation system?

A. Only alphabetical and numerical digits

B. Main classes, Greek letters, decimal notation, common isolates, special indicator digits, and ordinary indicator digits

C. Only decimal and special indicator digits

D. Greek letters and ordinary indicator digits only

Answer: B. Main classes, Greek letters, decimal notation, common isolates, special indicator digits, and ordinary indicator digits

Explanation: CC notation includes main classes (A/Z), Greek letters, decimal notation (0/9), common isolates (a/z except i, l, o), special indicator digits, and ordinary indicator digits.

67. What is one of the main criticisms of the Colon Classification (CC)?

A. Its simplicity

B. Its small number of digits

C. Its complexity and frightening class numbers

D. Its lack of mnemonic devices

Answer: C. Its complexity and frightening class numbers

Explanation: The main criticism of CC is its complexity and the intimidating nature of its class numbers.

68. How does Ranganathan's Colon Classification (CC) accommodate new subjects?

A. Through a fixed notation system

B. By using only decimal notation

C. By employing various methods including sector notation, empty and emptying digits

D. By limiting the number of digits used

Answer: C. By employing various methods including sector notation, empty and emptying digits

Explanation: CC accommodates new subjects using methods such as sector notation, empty and emptying digits, in addition to conventional hospitality devices like decimal fractions and gaps.

69. How is the CC notation described in terms of mnemonic quality?

A. Extremely mnemonic

B. Not mnemonic at all

C. Only partially mnemonic

D. Mnemonic for numerical digits only

Answer: A. Extremely mnemonic

Explanation: The CC notation is described as extremely mnemonic, which helps in the easy recall and organization of subjects.

70. What are the six species of digits used in the Colon Classification (CC)?

A. Greek letters, decimal notation, alphabetical digits, special indicators, ordinary indicators, and numerical digits

B. Main classes, Greek letters, decimal notation, common isolates, special indicator digits, and ordinary indicator digits

C. Main classes, numerical digits, special indicators, alphabetical digits, Greek letters, and common isolates

D. Decimal notation, common isolates, numerical digits, Greek letters, ordinary indicators, and special indicators

Answer: B. Main classes, Greek letters, decimal notation, common isolates, special indicator digits, and ordinary indicator digits

Explanation: The six species of digits in CC include main classes (A/Z), Greek letters, decimal

notation (0/9), common isolates (a/z except i, l, o), special indicator digits, and ordinary indicator digits.

1. What techniques and operations does an ideal and functional library adopt to facilitate its readers?

A. Classification and cataloguing

B. Only classification

C. Only cataloguing

D. Borrowing and lending

Answer: A. Classification and cataloguing

Explanation: An ideal and functional library adopts techniques like classification and cataloguing to facilitate its readers and optimize resource utilization.

2. How does an efficient, effective, and updated catalogue impact the use of library resources?

A. It decreases the use of resources

B. It has no impact on resource use

C. It greatly enhances the use of resources

D. It limits access to the collection

Answer: C. It greatly enhances the use of resources

Explanation: An efficient, effective, and updated catalogue helps in identifying, locating, and accessing the collection easily and quickly, thus enhancing the use of library resources.

3. What is the origin of the word 'catalogue'?

A. Latin phrase 'Catalogus'

B. Greek phrase 'Katalogs'

C. French phrase 'Catalogue'

D. German phrase 'Katalog'

Answer: B. Greek phrase 'Katalogs'

Explanation: The word ‘catalogue’ is derived from the Greek phrase ‘Katalogs,’ meaning a list, register, or complete enumeration of things.

4. What does the Greek word 'Kata' mean?

A. Word

B. Order

C. By or according to

D. Reason

Answer: C. By or according to

Explanation: In Greek, 'Kata' means 'by or according to.'

5. What does the Greek word 'logos' mean?

A. Word, order, reason

B. List, register

C. Collection, enumeration

D. Identification, location

Answer: A. Word, order, reason

Explanation: The Greek word 'logos' means 'word, order, reason.'

6. How did the Terminology Group at the International Conference on Cataloguing Principle (ICCP) in 1961 define a catalogue?

A. As a list of borrowed books

B. As a comprehensive list of books and documents in a library

C. As a partial list of a collection

D. As a register of borrowed and returned books

Answer: B. As a comprehensive list of books and documents in a library

Explanation: The ICCP defined a catalogue as a comprehensive list of a collection or collections of books, documents, or similar materials.

7. How did Ranganathan define a library catalogue?

A. As a list of borrowed books

B. As a methodically arranged record of information about bibliographical resources

C. As a register of borrowed and returned books

D. As a random list of books in a library

Answer: B. As a methodically arranged record of information about bibliographical resources

Explanation: Ranganathan defined a library catalogue as a methodically arranged record of information about bibliographical resources.

8. According to C.A. Cutter, what distinguishes a library catalogue from a bibliography?

A. A library catalogue is a list of borrowed books

B. A library catalogue is a list of books in some library or collections

C. A library catalogue is a register of borrowed and returned books

D. A library catalogue is a random list of books in a library

Answer: B. A library catalogue is a list of books in some library or collections

Explanation: According to C.A. Cutter, a library catalogue is a list of documents arranged in some definite plan, distinguishing it from a bibliography, which is a list of books in some library or collections.

9. According to Cutter, what should a catalogue enable a person to find if the author, title, or subject is known?

A. The publisher

B. The date of publication

C. The book

D. The book's price

Answer: C. The book

Explanation: Cutter states that a catalogue should enable a person to find a book if the author, title, or subject is known.

10. What does Cutter suggest a catalogue should show about a library's collection?

A. The date of acquisition

B. The condition of the books

C. What the library has by a given author, subject, or in a given kind of literature

D. The number of copies available

Answer: C. What the library has by a given author, subject, or in a given kind of literature

Explanation: Cutter suggests that a catalogue should show what the library has by a given author, subject, or in a given kind of literature.

11. How does Cutter believe a catalogue should assist in the choice of a book?

A. By recommending similar books

B. By describing the work adequately for easy identification and character

C. By showing the book's popularity

D. By providing reviews and ratings

Answer: B. By describing the work adequately for easy identification and character

Explanation: Cutter believes a catalogue should assist in the choice of a book by describing the work adequately for easy identification and character.

12. According to Ranganathan, how can a catalogue better serve a reader interested in a subject?

A. By listing the most popular books

B. By offering a summary of each book

C. By spreading a full, connected panorama of all materials on the desired subject, its sub-divisions, and broader subjects

D. By providing detailed author biographies

Answer: C. By spreading a full, connected panorama of all materials on the desired subject, its sub-divisions, and broader subjects

Explanation: Ranganathan suggests that a catalogue better serves a reader interested in a subject by providing a full, connected panorama of all materials on the desired subject, its sub-divisions, and broader subjects.

13. What does Ranganathan state a catalogue should answer about books by a specific author in the library?

A. The author's background

B. The author's writing style

C. Whether there is a book by the author in the library and all books by that author

D. The author's popularity

Answer: C. Whether there is a book by the author in the library and all books by that author

Explanation: Ranganathan states that a catalogue should answer whether there is a book by a specific author in the library and list all books by that author.

14. What question about a book's title should a catalogue answer according to Ranganathan?

A. The title's meaning

B. The book's price

C. Whether there is a book with such a title in the library

D. The book's length

Answer: C. Whether there is a book with such a title in the library

Explanation: According to Ranganathan, a catalogue should answer whether there is a book with a specific title in the library.

15. What information about editors, translators, revisers, or compilers should a catalogue provide according to Ranganathan?

A. Their biographies

B. Their other works

C. Whether there is a book by them in the library

D. Their academic credentials

Answer: C. Whether there is a book by them in the library

Explanation: Ranganathan states that a catalogue should answer whether there is a book by a particular editor, translator, reviser, or compiler in the library.

16. What specific subject-related question should a catalogue answer according to Ranganathan?

A. The history of the subject

B. The most popular books on the subject

C. Whether there is a book on a specific subject and its sub-divisions

D. The future trends of the subject

Answer: C. Whether there is a book on a specific subject and its sub-divisions

Explanation: Ranganathan suggests that a catalogue should answer whether there is a book on a specific subject and its sub-divisions.

17. What information about a publisher's series should a catalogue provide according to Ranganathan?

A. The series' popularity

B. The series' background

C. Whether there is a book in the series in the library

D. The series' future publications

Answer: C. Whether there is a book in the series in the library

Explanation: Ranganathan states that a catalogue should answer whether there is a book in a publisher’s series in the library.

18. According to Ranganathan, how should a catalogue be designed in light of the Five Laws of Library Science?

A. To provide detailed author biographies

B. To maximize the library's physical space

C. To disclose to every reader their documents, secure every document its reader, and save time for both the reader and the staff

D. To focus solely on popular books

Answer: C. To disclose to every reader their documents, secure every document its reader, and save time for both the reader and the staff

Explanation: Ranganathan emphasizes that a catalogue should be designed to disclose documents to every reader, secure every document its reader, and save time for both readers and staff, aligning with the Five Laws of Library Science.

19. What are the two main purposes of a library catalogue according to Lubetzky?

A. To provide detailed summaries and reviews

B. To help in the quick location of a particular publication and to display relevant and related documents of a given author

C. To list all books by publication date and price

D. To focus on digital resources and e-books

Answer: B. To help in the quick location of a particular publication and to display relevant and related documents of a given author

Explanation: Lubetzky states that a library catalogue should help in the quick location of a particular publication and display relevant and related documents of a given author.

20. What does Shera emphasize about the importance of a subject catalogue?

A. It should be organized alphabetically by author

B. It should focus only on fiction books

C. It should provide access by subject to all relevant material and show affiliations among subject fields

D. It should list books by size and color

Answer: C. It should provide access by subject to all relevant material and show affiliations among subject fields

Explanation: Shera emphasizes that a subject catalogue should provide access by subject to all relevant material and show affiliations among subject fields, among other functions.

21. According to Shera, what is one function of a subject catalogue?

A. To provide reviews and ratings of books

B. To bring together material of the same subject regardless of disparities in terminology

C. To organize books by their popularity

D. To list books by their publication date

Answer: B. To bring together material of the same subject regardless of disparities in terminology

Explanation: One function of a subject catalogue, as stated by Shera, is to bring together material of the same subject regardless of disparities in terminology.

22. How does Shera suggest a subject catalogue should provide entry to subject fields?

A. Through the use of advanced search algorithms

B. By listing only the most popular subjects

C. From the most general to the most specific

D. By focusing on visual elements

Answer: C. From the most general to the most specific

Explanation: Shera suggests that a subject catalogue should provide entry to any subject field from the most general to the most specific.

23. What does Shera indicate a subject catalogue should provide for the user?

A. A formal description of the subject content of any bibliographic unit

B. A list of upcoming library events

C. Detailed author biographies

D. Book prices and availability

Answer: A. A formal description of the subject content of any bibliographic unit

Explanation: Shera indicates that a subject catalogue should provide a formal description of the subject content of any bibliographic unit.

24. What was unanimously decided at the International Conference on Cataloging Principles in Paris regarding the functions of a library catalogue?

A. It should focus on digital resources

B. It should help ascertain whether the library contains a particular book by author and title or suitable substitutes, and which works by an author and editions of a work are in the library

C. It should provide only a basic list of books

D. It should prioritize rare books and manuscripts

Answer: B. It should help ascertain whether the library contains a particular book by author and title or suitable substitutes, and which works by an author and editions of a work are in the library

Explanation: The International Conference on Cataloging Principles decided that the primary functions of a library catalogue should be to help ascertain whether the library contains a specific book by author and title or suitable substitutes, and which works by an author and editions of a work are in the library.

25. Which of the following is NOT a summarized function of a library catalogue?

A. It serves as an exhaustive bibliography on a subject

B. It provides detailed reviews of books

C. It helps the library staff in ordering new books and avoiding duplication

D. It displays the record of library's resources for easy access

Answer: B. It provides detailed reviews of books

Explanation: Providing detailed reviews of books is not mentioned as a function of a library catalogue. The functions include serving as an exhaustive bibliography, helping staff order books, and displaying the record of the library's resources.

26. What is one of the qualities of a good catalogue?

A. It should focus on digital catalogs only

B. It should be accurate, avoiding errors in spelling, style, or format

C. It should list books by color

D. It should prioritize new releases

Answer: B. It should be accurate, avoiding errors in spelling, style, or format

Explanation: One of the qualities of a good catalogue is accuracy, avoiding errors in spelling, style, or format to prevent misunderstanding and disappointment for the reader.

27. Why is consistency important in a library catalogue?

A. It helps keep the catalogue short

B. It ensures that cataloguing rules are followed strictly and consistently, even after amendments

C. It allows for frequent changes and updates

D. It focuses on popular books

Answer: B. It ensures that cataloguing rules are followed strictly and consistently, even after amendments

Explanation: Consistency is important because it ensures that cataloguing rules are followed strictly and consistently, even after amendments, to maintain uniformity and reliability.

28. , why should a librarian keep the needs of users in mind when preparing a catalogue?

A. To make the catalogue visually appealing

B. To satisfy the needs of the majority of the users and address frequent queries

C. To limit the number of entries

D. To focus on rare books

Answer: B. To satisfy the needs of the majority of the users and address frequent queries

Explanation: A librarian should keep the needs of users in mind to ensure the catalogue satisfies the majority of users and addresses the type of queries frequently made by them.

29. What is meant by the 'multi-pronged approach' in cataloguing?

A. Providing only the main entry for each book

B. Providing multiple added entries to enable users to locate a document from various angles such as author, title, editor, subject, joint author

C. Listing books by their publication date

D. Focusing solely on fiction books

Answer: B. Providing multiple added entries to enable users to locate a document from various angles such as author, title, editor, subject, joint author

Explanation: The 'multi-pronged approach' involves providing multiple added entries to enable users to locate a document from various angles, thereby increasing the chances of retrieval on demand.

30. why is the physical form of a catalogue important?

A. It should be visually appealing

B. It should be flexible, up-to-date, easy to consult, and allow speedy search

C. It should focus on rare books only

D. It should be digital only

Answer: B. It should be flexible, up-to-date, easy to consult, and allow speedy search

Explanation: The physical form of a catalogue is important because it needs to be flexible, up-to-date, easy to consult, and allow for speedy searches, enabling users to find and utilize library resources effectively.

31. What does the First Law of Library Science, "Books are for Use," imply for library catalogues?

A. The catalogue should be digital

B. The catalogue should organize the collections for optimum utilization by providing physical facilities and reader services

C. The catalogue should focus on new releases

D. The catalogue should be visually appealing

Answer: B. The catalogue should organize the collections for optimum utilization by providing physical facilities and reader services

Explanation: The First Law of Library Science implies that the catalogue should organize the collections for optimum utilization, providing physical facilities and reader services to maximize the use of the library's resources.

32. According to the Second Law of Library Science, "Every Reader Her/His Book," what should a catalogue provide?

A. A digital-only format

B. Access to rare manuscripts

C. Various search approaches such as author, subject, and title, and preparation of subject analytical entries

D. Focus on fiction books

Answer: C. Various search approaches such as author, subject, and title, and preparation of subject analytical entries

Explanation: The Second Law implies that the catalogue should provide various search approaches such as author, subject, and title, and should prepare subject analytical entries to reveal the hidden contents of composite books.

33. What does the Third Law of Library Science, "Every Book its Readers," require from a catalogue?

A. Digital access only

B. Preparation of analytical entries and cross-reference entries, especially for edited works, seminar/conference proceedings, and journals

C. Focus on new books

D. Detailed reviews of books

Answer: B. Preparation of analytical entries and cross-reference entries, especially for edited works, seminar/conference proceedings, and journals

Explanation: The Third Law requires the catalogue to prepare analytical and cross-reference entries, especially for edited works,

seminar/conference proceedings, and journals, ensuring readers can find specific articles or papers they need.

34. According to the Fourth Law of Library Science, "Save the Time of the Reader," what qualities should a catalogue have?

A. Be visually appealing

B. Be simple in design, up-to-date, communicable, and have elaborate guides

C. Focus on fiction books

D. Be available only in print

Answer: B. Be simple in design, up-to-date, communicable, and have elaborate guides

Explanation: The Fourth Law implies that the catalogue should be simple in design, up-to-date, communicable, and have elaborate guides, helping to save the precious time of the readers.

35. What does the Fifth Law of Library Science, "Library is a Growing Organism," imply about catalogues?

A. Catalogues should remain static

B. Catalogues should be digital

C. Catalogues should grow and adapt to changes in publications, user needs, and technological advancements

D. Catalogues should focus on old books

Answer: C. Catalogues should grow and adapt to changes in publications, user needs, and technological advancements

Explanation: The Fifth Law implies that catalogues should grow and adapt to changes in the nature and variety of publications, user needs, and technological advancements, ensuring they remain relevant and useful.

36. What is the main purpose of a library catalogue?

A. To serve as a decorative item

B. To help in identifying and locating a book in a library and serve as a retrieval tool

C. To display new arrivals

D. To serve as a historical record

Answer: B. To help in identifying and locating a book in a library and serve as a retrieval tool

Explanation: The main purpose of a library catalogue is to help in identifying and locating a book in a library and serve as a retrieval tool, providing detailed information about the documents acquired by the library.

37. How does the arrangement of a library catalogue differ from an index?

A. A catalogue is always arranged alphabetically, while an index can be classified

B. A catalogue can be arranged alphabetically or in a classified sequence, while an index is always arranged alphabetically

C. Both are always arranged alphabetically

D. Both are always arranged in a classified sequence

Answer: B. A catalogue can be arranged alphabetically or in a classified sequence, while an index is always arranged alphabetically

Explanation: The arrangement of a library catalogue can be either alphabetical or in a classified sequence, whereas an index is always arranged alphabetically.

38. What is a unique feature of a shelf list?

A. It is an indispensable tool for readers and library staff

B. It is consulted only by the library staff and used usually at the time of book selection and stock verification

C. It is arranged alphabetically

D. It is available in digital format only

Answer: B. It is consulted only by the library staff and used usually at the time of book selection and stock verification

Explanation: A unique feature of a shelf list is that it is consulted only by the library staff and is used

usually at the time of book selection and stock verification, ensuring inventory control of the collection.

39.what is the primary function of an accession register?

A. To help readers find books quickly

B. To serve as a stock register and list books in chronological order

C. To provide detailed bibliographical information

D. To display popular books

Answer: B. To serve as a stock register and list books in chronological order

Explanation: The primary function of an accession register is to serve as a stock register and list books in chronological order by date, providing a record of the total collection of the library.

40. How does the degree of use differ between a library catalogue and an accession register?

A. Both are used equally by readers and library staff

B. The library catalogue is heavily used by both readers and library staff, while the accession register is used sometimes by staff only

C. The accession register is more frequently used than the library catalogue

D. The library catalogue is used by staff only, while the accession register is heavily used by readers

Answer: B. The library catalogue is heavily used by both readers and library staff, while the accession register is used sometimes by staff only

Explanation: The library catalogue is heavily used by both readers and library staff as it serves as a retrieval tool, while the accession register is used sometimes by staff only and fails to bring similar subjects together as effectively.

41. What was formulated by S. R. Ranganathan in 1934?

A. Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules (AACR)

B. Classified Catalogue Code (CCC)

C. International Standard Bibliographic Description (ISBD)

D. Machine-Readable Form

Answer: B. Classified Catalogue Code (CCC)

Explanation: The Classified Catalogue Code (CCC) was formulated by S. R. Ranganathan in 1934, providing user-oriented rules for subjects entries and descriptive cataloguing.

42. What is the main purpose of the Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules (AACR)?

A. To create an inventory of library items

B. To provide rules for cataloguing non-book materials

C. To achieve uniformity, consistency, and standardisation for cataloguing entries

D. To develop a machine-readable form of documents

Answer: C. To achieve uniformity, consistency, and standardisation for cataloguing entries

Explanation: The Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules (AACR) follow the International Standard Bibliographic Description (ISBD) format to achieve uniformity, consistency, and standardisation in cataloguing entries.

43. Which section of a book is considered the main source of information for a cataloguer?

A. Preface

B. Table of contents

C. Title page

D. Body of the text

Answer: C. Title page

Explanation: The title page is the main source of information for a cataloguer, though information from the preface, table of contents, and body of the text may also be used for cataloguing non-book materials.

44. What should be done with the catalogue entries of lost, damaged, or withdrawn books?

A. They should be highlighted

B. They should be removed from the catalogue

C. They should be kept in a separate section

D. They should be updated with a status note

Answer: B. They should be removed from the catalogue

Explanation: The entries of lost, damaged, or withdrawn books should be removed from the catalogue to ensure it remains live and up-to-date.

45. What is the purpose of cross-reference entries in a catalogue?

A. To provide detailed bibliographical data

B. To indicate the linear arrangement of books

C. To connect two related entries

D. To list the inventory of a library

Answer: C. To connect two related entries

Explanation: Cross-reference entries, also called "see" and "see also" entries, direct users to related entries, connecting two related catalogue entries.

46. What does the term "symbiosis" refer to in the context of library science?

A. The relationship between users and librarians

B. The partnership between classification and cataloguing

C. The connection between different library departments

D. The mutual understanding between authors and publishers

Answer: B. The partnership between classification and cataloguing

Explanation: In library science, "symbiosis" refers to the mutually beneficial partnership between classification and cataloguing, ensuring effective organization and retrieval of information.

47. Which term refers to a form of document readable only by a machine?

A. Standard Format

B. Linear Arrangement

C. Machine-Readable Form

D. Index

Answer: C. Machine-Readable Form

Explanation: A machine-readable form is a document format readable only by machines, such as computers or microform readers.

48. What is the definition of an inventory in the context of a library?

A. A record of bibliographical data

B. A detailed, often descriptive list of something

C. An index for quick reference

D. A tool for classification of books

Answer: B. A detailed, often descriptive list of something

Explanation: In a library context, an inventory is a detailed, often descriptive list of items, used to keep track of the library's collection.

BLI 223 BLOCK 2 UNIT 6 TYPES AND FORMS OF CATALOGUES

1. What does the inner form of a library catalogue refer to?

A. The physical appearance of the catalogue

B. The arrangement of catalogue entries for storage and retrieval

C. The types of books in the catalogue

D. The digital format of the catalogue

Answer: B. The arrangement of catalogue entries for storage and retrieval

Explanation: The inner form of a library catalogue refers to the logical and systematic arrangement of catalogue entries for efficient storage and retrieval.

2. Which of the following is NOT an inner form of a catalogue?

A. Alphabetical

B. Classified

C. Numerical

D. Alphabetico-classed

Answer: C. Numerical

Explanation: The inner forms of catalogues include alphabetical, classified, and alphabetico-classed. Numerical is not considered an inner form of a catalogue.

3. What type of catalogue falls under the category of an alphabetical catalogue?

A. Classified catalogue

B. Author catalogue

C. Alphabetico-classed catalogue

D. Numerical catalogue

Answer: B. Author catalogue

Explanation: Author, Name, Title, Subject, and Dictionary catalogues fall under the category of an alphabetical catalogue.

4. What is a classified catalogue?

A. A catalogue arranged alphabetically by author's name

B. A catalogue arranged in a classified order

C. A catalogue arranged alphabetically by title

D. A catalogue that mixes author, title, and subject entries

Answer: B. A catalogue arranged in a classified order

Explanation: A classified catalogue is arranged in a classified order, which is an artificial order often accompanied by an alphabetical index for ease of use.

5. What is an alphabetico-classed catalogue?

A. A catalogue arranged alphabetically by title

B. A variation of the classified catalogue arranged alphabetically

C. A catalogue arranged purely alphabetically

D. A catalogue that does not use classification

Answer: B. A variation of the classified catalogue arranged alphabetically

Explanation: An alphabetico-classed catalogue is a variation of the classified catalogue that overcomes the artificiality of classified arrangement by making it classified alphabetically.

6. How can author catalogues be arranged in libraries?

A. Exclusively as author catalogues

B. As part of a dictionary catalogue

C. As part of the alphabetical index of a classified catalogue

D. All of the above

Answer: D. All of the above

Explanation: Author catalogues can be arranged exclusively as author catalogues, as part of a dictionary catalogue, or as part of the alphabetical index of a classified catalogue.

7. What is an advantage of an author catalogue?

A. It mixes titles and subjects with author entries

B. It provides all the documents by an author in one place

C. It scatters works of the same author through the catalogue

D. It does not provide cross-references

Answer: B. It provides all the documents by an author in one place

Explanation: An author catalogue brings together the titles of books by the same author in one place, helping users find all works by a given author easily.

8. What is a disadvantage of an author catalogue?

A. It satisfies all approaches of readers

B. It requires the reader to know the exact name of the author

C. It ensures no scattering of works of the same author

D. It provides cross-references for variant names

Answer: B. It requires the reader to know the exact name of the author

Explanation: A disadvantage of an author catalogue is that it requires the reader to know the exact name of the author, which may be challenging if the author is known by different names or pseudonyms.

9. What is a name catalogue?

A. A catalogue containing only author entries

B. A catalogue containing entries for works of one author and books written on them

C. A catalogue containing entries for corporate authors only

D. A catalogue containing only subject entries

Answer: B. A catalogue containing entries for works of one author and books written on them

Explanation: A name catalogue is a variation and extension of an author catalogue that combines author and subject entries, including works by and on an author, in one alphabetical sequence.

10. Which of the following is an example of a person as an author entry in a name catalogue?

A. Oxford Historical Series

B. Nehru, Jawaharlal: Discovery of India

C. Bombay University

D. Jawaharlal Nehru: Political Biography by F. Moraces

Answer: B. Nehru, Jawaharlal: Discovery of India

Explanation: "Nehru, Jawaharlal: Discovery of India" is an example of a person as an author entry in a name catalogue.

11. What is one advantage of a name catalogue?

A. It includes title entries

B. It combines author and subject entries

C. It is used widely outside Great Britain

D. It includes series entries

Answer: B. It combines author and subject entries

Explanation: A name catalogue is valuable because it combines author and subject entries, providing a comprehensive view of works by and on an author.

12. What is one disadvantage of a name catalogue?

A. It includes title entries

B. It is limited to personal and corporate names only

C. It is used widely outside Great Britain

D. It includes entries for fiction

Answer: B. It is limited to personal and corporate names only

Explanation: A disadvantage of a name catalogue is that it limits subject entries to personal and

corporate names only and does not include title entries or entries under collaborators and series.

13. In a title catalogue, what occupies the leading section of entries?

A. Author names

B. Titles of documents

C. Subject headings

D. Corporate names

Answer: B. Titles of documents

Explanation: In a title catalogue, the titles of documents occupy the leading section of entries, which are arranged alphabetically.

14. What is an advantage of a title catalogue?

A. It satisfies all approaches of readers

B. It satisfies readers who remember only the exact title

C. It includes entries for non-fiction titles only

D. It is used widely outside public libraries

Answer: B. It satisfies readers who remember only the exact title

Explanation: An advantage of a title catalogue is that it satisfies the queries of readers who remember only the exact title of a document.

15. What is one disadvantage of a title catalogue?

A. It includes author entries

B. It includes subject entries

C. It cannot alone satisfy all approaches of the readers except the title approach

D. It is useful for non-fiction titles

Answer: C. It cannot alone satisfy all approaches of the readers except the title approach

Explanation: A disadvantage of a title catalogue is that it cannot alone satisfy all approaches of the readers except the title approach, limiting its usefulness.

16. What is an alphabetical subject catalogue?

A. A list of books arranged by author names alphabetically

B. A list of books arranged under specific subject headings alphabetically

C. A list of books arranged by title alphabetically

D. A list of books arranged by series alphabetically

Answer: B. A list of books arranged under specific subject headings alphabetically

Explanation: An alphabetical subject catalogue arranges books under specific subject headings in alphabetical order, bringing together several books on the same subject in the catalogue.

17. In an alphabetical subject catalogue, what determines the order if there are multiple books on the same subject?

A. The title of the book

B. The year of publication

C. The author's name

D. The publisher's name

Answer: C. The author's name

Explanation: If there are multiple books on the same subject, the author's name is taken to determine the alphabetical order in an alphabetical subject catalogue.

18. What is a primary function of an alphabetical subject catalogue?

A. To find books by a specific author

B. To find books by title

C. To know what books are there on a particular subject in the library

D. To find books by publisher

Answer: C. To know what books are there on a particular subject in the library

Explanation: The primary function of an alphabetical subject catalogue is to let readers

know what books are available on a particular subject in the library.

19. What is a disadvantage of an alphabetical subject catalogue?

A. It does not satisfy the specific subject approach of readers

B. Related subjects are scattered throughout the catalogue due to alphabetical arrangement

C. It requires a Standard List of Subject Headings for consistency

D. It fails to arrange entries alphabetically

Answer: B. Related subjects are scattered throughout the catalogue due to alphabetical arrangement

Explanation: A disadvantage of an alphabetical subject catalogue is that related subjects are scattered throughout the catalogue owing to their alphabetical arrangement.

20. What is a dictionary catalogue?

A. A catalogue in which entries are arranged alphabetically by author

B. A catalogue in which entries are arranged alphabetically by title

C. A catalogue in which all entries (author, title, subject, series) and their related references are arranged together in one alphabetical sequence

D. A catalogue in which entries are arranged alphabetically by subject

Answer: C. A catalogue in which all entries (author, title, subject, series) and their related references are arranged together in one alphabetical sequence

Explanation: A dictionary catalogue arranges all entries (authors, titles, subjects, series, etc.) and their related references together in one alphabetical sequence, similar to a dictionary.

21. What type of cross-reference does a dictionary catalogue with cross-references provide?

A. 'See' reference and 'See also' reference

B. 'Refer' reference and 'Mention' reference

C. 'Link' reference and 'Join' reference

D. 'Direct' reference and 'Indirect' reference

Answer: A. 'See' reference and 'See also' reference

Explanation: A dictionary catalogue with cross-references provides 'see' reference (from unused to used headings) and 'see also' reference (from specific subject to general subject, from narrower term to broader term).

22. What are the two files into which a dictionary catalogue is divided?

A. One for fiction and one for non-fiction

B. One for printed books and one for digital resources

C. One for author, title, series, and collaborator entries and another for subject entries

D. One for old books and one for new books

Answer: C. One for author, title, series, and collaborator entries and another for subject entries

Explanation: A dictionary catalogue is divided into two files: one for author, title, series, and collaborator entries and another for subject entries.

23. What is the primary purpose of a classified catalogue?

A. To arrange entries alphabetically by author

B. To provide access to information by subject using class numbers

C. To list books by title only

D. To arrange entries based on the publication year

Answer: B. To provide access to information by subject using class numbers

Explanation: A classified catalogue provides access to information by subject using class numbers, which helps users locate documents based on the subject matter.

24. How does a classified catalogue assist users in navigating through the catalogue?

A. By providing an alphabetical index

B. By displaying entries in chronological order

C. By offering a guide to classification schemes

D. By arranging all entries by title

Answer: A. By providing an alphabetical index

Explanation: A classified catalogue includes an alphabetical part to help users navigate through the classified part and reach the desired information.

25. According to the Encyclopaedia of Librarianship, how is a classified catalogue described?

A. A catalogue of subject entries arranged alphabetically

B. A catalogue of subject entries arranged in a systematic order according to a scheme of classification

C. A catalogue of title entries arranged by author

D. A catalogue of author entries arranged by publication date

Answer: B. A catalogue of subject entries arranged in a systematic order according to a scheme of classification

Explanation: A classified catalogue is described as a catalogue of subject entries arranged in a systematic order according to a scheme of classification.

26. What are 'Feature Headings' in a classified catalogue?

A. Entries arranged alphabetically by title

B. Verbal equivalents of class numbers provided to aid in understanding the classification scheme

C. A list of cross-references for related subjects

D. An index of author names

Answer: B. Verbal equivalents of class numbers provided to aid in understanding the classification scheme

Explanation: 'Feature Headings' are verbal equivalents of class numbers provided in a classified catalogue to help users understand the classification scheme.

27. What does the alphabetical part of a classified catalogue include?

A. Only the author index

B. Author, title, subject entries, and other entries such as collaborators and series

C. Only the subject index

D. Only the class numbers and their verbal equivalents

Answer: B. Author, title, subject entries, and other entries such as collaborators and series

Explanation: The alphabetical part of a classified catalogue includes author, title, subject entries, and other entries such as collaborators and series to support the classified part of the catalogue.

28. How does a classified catalogue fulfill the functions of a dictionary catalogue?

A. By arranging all entries by publication date

B. By combining the classified part for subject organization and the alphabetical part for author and title organization

C. By listing entries based on the book's physical location

D. By using only subject headings for cataloguing

Answer: B. By combining the classified part for subject organization and the alphabetical part for author and title organization

Explanation: A classified catalogue combines the classified part for subject organization and the alphabetical part for author and title organization to fulfill the functions of a dictionary catalogue.

29. What is the main advantage of an alphabetico-classed catalogue?

A. It provides entries arranged solely by title

B. It combines the best features of dictionary and classified catalogues

C. It lists books only by publication date

D. It arranges entries based on the physical location in the library

Answer: B. It combines the best features of dictionary and classified catalogues

Explanation: An alphabetico-classed catalogue combines the advantages of a classified catalogue with the directness and ease of consultation of an alphabetical catalogue.

30. How does an alphabetico-classed catalogue arrange its entries?

A. By publication date

B. By author name only

C. By broad subjects alphabetically, with sub-divisions also in alphabetical order

D. By physical location in the library

Answer: C. By broad subjects alphabetically, with sub-divisions also in alphabetical order

Explanation: In an alphabetico-classed catalogue, entries are arranged under broad subjects alphabetically, with topics subordinate to these subjects listed in alphabetical order.

31. What is a key difference between alphabetico-classed and dictionary catalogues?

A. Alphabetico-classed catalogues do not use any classification scheme, while dictionary catalogues do

B. Alphabetico-classed catalogues combine alphabetical and classified approaches, whereas dictionary catalogues use only alphabetical order

C. Dictionary catalogues arrange entries by publication date, while alphabetico-classed catalogues do not

D. Dictionary catalogues include fewer cross-references compared to alphabetico-classed catalogues

Answer: B. Alphabetico-classed catalogues combine alphabetical and classified approaches, whereas dictionary catalogues use only alphabetical order

Explanation: Alphabetico-classed catalogues combine both alphabetical and classified approaches, while dictionary catalogues use only alphabetical order.

32. What is one disadvantage of an alphabetico-classed catalogue compared to a dictionary catalogue?

A. It is more complex and requires a two-step search

B. It arranges entries only by title

C. It cannot provide a subject bibliography

D. It does not include any cross-references

Answer: A. It is more complex and requires a two-step search

Explanation: An alphabetico-classed catalogue requires a two-step search process, making it more complex compared to the direct search available in a dictionary catalogue.

33. What is the essential requirement for choosing an inner form of catalogue according to the passage?

A. The catalogue should be prepared based on the library's financial position only

B. The catalogue should satisfy different approaches of the readers

C. The catalogue should be constructed without considering user needs

D. The catalogue should be compiled without considering the type of documents

Answer: B. The catalogue should satisfy different approaches of the readers

Explanation: A good library catalogue should satisfy different approaches of the readers and meet their diverse needs.

34. How does an alphabetico-classed catalogue support the preparation of subject bibliographies?

A. It does not support subject bibliography preparation

B. It allows for easier preparation of subject bibliographies compared to other catalogues

C. It only supports the preparation of author bibliographies

D. It supports only general bibliographies, not subject-specific ones

Answer: B. It allows for easier preparation of subject bibliographies compared to other catalogues

Explanation: An alphabetico-classed catalogue is convenient for the preparation of subject bibliographies due to its arrangement of broad subjects and sub-divisions.

35. What is a key feature of the alphabetical part of an alphabetico-classed catalogue?

A. It provides an alphabetical list of class numbers

B. It includes a sequence of broad subject headings with further subdivisions in alphabetical order

C. It lists entries solely by author name

D. It arranges books based on their publication date

Answer: B. It includes a sequence of broad subject headings with further subdivisions in alphabetical order

Explanation: The alphabetical part of an alphabetico-classed catalogue includes broad subject headings with further subdivisions arranged in alphabetical order.

36. What is a key criterion for selecting the best physical form of a library catalogue?

A. It should be expensive to produce and maintain

B. It should be possible to keep it up to date easily

C. It should require large amounts of physical space

D. It should not provide multiple access points

Answer: B. It should be possible to keep it up to date easily

Explanation: A key criterion for selecting the best physical form of a library catalogue is its ability to be kept up to date easily, implying that entries can be inserted or withdrawn flexibly.

37. What is one advantage of using a bound register form for a library catalogue?

A. It allows easy insertion and withdrawal of entries

B. It is very expensive to produce and maintain

C. It is portable and can be placed in different locations within the library

D. It supports extensive use of cross-references

Answer: C. It is portable and can be placed in different locations within the library

Explanation: The bound register form is advantageous because it can be easily copied and placed at different locations, facilitating consultation from various parts of the library.

38. What is a significant disadvantage of the bound register form of catalogue?

A. It is very flexible and allows easy updating

B. It is compact and requires minimal space

C. It cannot be kept up to date easily and lacks flexibility

D. It supports easy removal of damaged or outdated entries

Answer: C. It cannot be kept up to date easily and lacks flexibility

Explanation: A significant disadvantage of the bound register form is that it cannot be easily updated and lacks flexibility, making it challenging to insert new entries or make updates.

39. What is a major drawback of the printed book form of catalogue?

A. It allows for easy insertion of new entries

B. It is inexpensive to produce and maintain

C. It is not flexible, making updates and deletions difficult

D. It provides multiple access points for users

Answer: C. It is not flexible, making updates and deletions difficult

Explanation: The printed book form of catalogue is not flexible, making it difficult to insert new entries or remove outdated ones, which is a major drawback.

40. How does a sheaf form catalogue facilitate updating and maintaining entries?

A. By using a fixed format that does not allow changes

B. By allowing new slips to be inserted and existing slips to be removed

C. By printing all entries on a fixed number of pages

D. By requiring frequent reprinting of the entire catalogue

Answer: B. By allowing new slips to be inserted and existing slips to be removed

Explanation: A sheaf form catalogue allows for easy updating by letting users insert new slips and remove outdated or withdrawn entries.

41. What is a disadvantage of the sheaf form catalogue related to its physical handling?

A. It is difficult to store and requires significant space

B. The process of filing and fixing slips is time-consuming and tedious

C. It does not allow for easy removal of outdated entries

D. It provides no access points for users

Answer: B. The process of filing and fixing slips is time-consuming and tedious

Explanation: The sheaf form catalogue's process of filing and fixing slips into a binder is time-consuming and tedious, which is a disadvantage in maintaining the catalogue.

42. How does the sheaf form catalogue compare to the dictionary catalogue in terms of participation in cooperative ventures?

A. It is easier to participate in cooperative ventures using sheaf forms

B. It is not convenient for participating in cooperative ventures where unit cards are used

C. It provides more flexibility in cooperative ventures than dictionary catalogues

D. It does not affect participation in cooperative ventures

Answer: B. It is not convenient for participating in cooperative ventures where unit cards are used

Explanation: The sheaf form catalogue is less convenient for participating in cooperative ventures that use unit cards for entries, making it less adaptable for such collaborations.

43. What is a key characteristic of a card form library catalogue?

A. Each document is represented on multiple cards

B. Each document's bibliographical elements are recorded on a single card

C. Cards are randomly arranged in the catalogue

D. It is inflexible in keeping the catalogue updated

Answer: B. Each document's bibliographical elements are recorded on a single card

Explanation: In a card form library catalogue, every document's bibliographical details are recorded on a single card, known as the unit card principle.

44. What is a notable advantage of the card catalogue's unit card principle?

A. Cards can be easily removed without authorization

B. Each card is a single, self-contained unit allowing multiple approach points

C. It is difficult to update and maintain

D. The card catalogue cannot participate in cooperative cataloguing schemes

Answer: B. Each card is a single, self-contained unit allowing multiple approach points

Explanation: The unit card principle allows each card to be a single, self-contained unit, enabling additional approach points and cross-references.

45. How does the card catalogue facilitate the updating process?

A. It is inflexible, requiring complete reprinting for updates

B. Entries can be easily added or withdrawn, allowing for constant updates

C. Updates can only be made by retyping entire cards

D. It does not support updating entries

Answer: B. Entries can be easily added or withdrawn, allowing for constant updates

Explanation: The card catalogue is flexible in keeping it updated, allowing for the easy addition and withdrawal of entries.

46. What advantage does the card catalogue offer in terms of durability?

A. It is less durable compared to other catalogue forms

B. Cards are hard and tough, ensuring longer durability

C. The catalogue is made of fragile materials that wear out quickly

D. It requires frequent replacement due to low durability

Answer: B. Cards are hard and tough, ensuring longer durability

Explanation: The cards in a card catalogue are made of hard and tough materials, making them more durable compared to other catalogue forms.

47. Which organization was a pioneer in providing printed card services to libraries?

A. The British Library

B. H.W. Wilson and Co.

C. Library of Congress, USA

D. Encyclopedia Britannica

Answer: C. Library of Congress, USA

Explanation: The Library of Congress in the USA was a pioneer in starting the card service and provided printed catalogue cards to libraries.

48. How does the card catalogue support cooperative cataloguing schemes?

A. It does not support cooperative cataloguing

B. It allows libraries to share and distribute catalogue cards, reducing the staff burden

C. It requires each library to create its own unique catalogue

D. It complicates the process of sharing catalogue cards

Answer: B. It allows libraries to share and distribute catalogue cards, reducing the staff burden

Explanation: The card catalogue supports cooperative cataloguing schemes by allowing libraries to share and distribute catalogue cards, thus reducing the staff burden.

49. What is the primary advantage of "prenatal cataloguing" as described by Ranganathan?

A. It allows libraries to create their own catalogues without any external data.

B. It enables libraries to use bibliographical data available on the book for catalogue preparation.

C. It requires libraries to manually write all bibliographic entries.

D. It eliminates the need for any form of catalogue preparation.

Answer: B. It enables libraries to use bibliographical data available on the book for catalogue preparation.

Explanation: Prenatal cataloguing allows libraries to use the bibliographical data already included in the book for their own catalogue preparation, streamlining the process.

50. Which organization was a pioneer in the enterprise of printing bibliographic entries on the reverse side of the title page?

A. The British Library

B. The Library of Congress

C. The British National Bibliography

D. The International Federation of Library Associations (IFLA)

Answer: B. The Library of Congress

Explanation: The Library of Congress was a pioneer in printing bibliographic entries on the reverse side of the title page, known as prenatal cataloguing.

51. When did the British National Bibliography begin participating in the Cataloging in Publication (CIP) Programme?

A. January 1975

B. January 1976

C. January 1977

D. January 1978

Answer: C. January 1977

Explanation: The British National Bibliography began participating in the CIP Programme from January 1977.

52. What is a key feature of microform catalogues?

A. They are read by the naked eye.

B. They are printed on large, easily visible pages.

C. They are reduced in size and require a microform reader to view.

D. They are available in digital format.

Answer: C. They are reduced in size and require a microform reader to view.

Explanation: Microform catalogues are reduced in size and must be viewed with a microform reader, which magnifies the images on the film or fiche.

53. What is the typical reduction ratio for microfiche compared to the original document?

A. 1/10

B. 1/20

C. 1/40

D. 1/80

Answer: C. 1/40

Explanation: Microfiche typically has a reduction ratio where the width and height of the microimage are 1/40 of the original document's dimensions.

54. How many frames per card does a typical microfiche contain?

A. 100

B. 200

C. 300

D. 400

Answer: B. 200

Explanation: A typical microfiche contains approximately 200 frames per card, with each frame being a reduced image of the original document.

55. What is the primary format used for the MARC record format?

A. Digital

B. Printed

C. Optical Disc

D. Microform

Answer: A. Digital

Explanation: The MARC record format is primarily a digital format designed for cataloging bibliographic records.

56. Which libraries were involved in designing the MARC record format?

A. The British Library and the National Library of Australia

B. The Library of Congress and the British Library

C. The New York Public Library and the Library of Congress

D. The National Library of France and the British Library

Answer: B. The Library of Congress and the British Library

Explanation: The MARC record format was designed by the Library of Congress and the British Library.

57. What is the format of a CD-ROM catalogue?

A. MARC-based compilation distributed on CD-ROMs

B. Printed book format

C. Loose-leaf binder format

D. Microfiche format

Answer: A. MARC-based compilation distributed on CD-ROMs

Explanation: A CD-ROM catalogue is a MARC-based compilation of bibliographic records distributed on CD-ROMs.

58. How do CD-ROMs store data?

A. Through magnetic tape

B. Through laser beams on optical discs

C. Through ink on paper

D. Through microfilm

Answer: B. Through laser beams on optical discs

Explanation: CD-ROMs store data using laser beams on optical discs.

59. What is a significant advantage of CD-ROM catalogues compared to traditional formats like microform?

A. They provide offline access with excellent search facilities.

B. They are only available in printed format.

C. They require constant internet connectivity.

D. They are less compact than traditional formats.

Answer: A. They provide offline access with excellent search facilities.

Explanation: CD-ROM catalogues offer offline access and excellent search facilities, which is a significant advantage over traditional formats like microform.

60. What milestone did the introduction of offline, computer-produced books and Computer Output Microform (COM) catalogues represent?

A. A move from digital to printed formats

B. A milestone in the history of library catalogue production and maintenance

C. The end of physical library catalogues

D. The start of online cataloguing systems

Answer: B. A milestone in the history of library catalogue production and maintenance

Explanation: The introduction of offline, computer-produced book and COM catalogues marked a significant milestone in the history of library catalogue production and maintenance.

BLI 223 BLOCK 2 UNIT 7 LIBRARY CATALOGUING

1. What is a characteristic of fixed length records in automated systems?

A. They can have varying field lengths

B. They contain the same field and each field is of the same length

C. They may or may not include all the fields

D. Fields may appear in any order

Answer: B. They contain the same field and each field is of the same length

Explanation: Fixed length records in automated systems have the same field and each field is always of the same length from one record to another.

2. Why do bibliographic records not fit naturally into the fixed length pattern?

A. They always contain the same number of fields

B. They do not contain any variable-length fields

C. They include fields that occur only from time to time and fields that vary in number and length

D. They are always fixed in length and format

Answer: C. They include fields that occur only from time to time and fields that vary in number and length

Explanation: Bibliographic records are complex, including fields that may occur only occasionally and fields that vary in number and length, making them unsuitable for a fixed length pattern.

3. What is an example of a database where records can be treated as fixed length?

A. A bibliographic record system

B. An online cataloguing system

C. A mailing list for officials within an organization

D. A dynamic content management system

Answer: C. A mailing list for officials within an organization

Explanation: A mailing list database, where each record includes fixed fields such as name, job title, province, state, and postal code, can be treated as fixed length.

4. What issue must a system designer address when working with fixed length records?

A. Ensuring all data elements are of varying lengths

B. Allocating a suitable number of characters for each data element to avoid wasting space

C. Allowing records to have variable field lengths

D. Ignoring the length of data elements

Answer: B. Allocating a suitable number of characters for each data element to avoid wasting space

Explanation: The system designer must allocate a suitable number of characters for each data element to ensure it is not too small to accommodate the majority of records or too large to waste space.

5. How do content designators function in automated systems?

A. They are used to identify data fields by position

B. They group data fields at the end of the record

C. They denote the identity of each data field, typically grouped at the beginning of the record

D. They change the data format of the records

Answer: C. They denote the identity of each data field, typically grouped at the beginning of the record

Explanation: Content designators are used to denote the identity of each data field within a record, often grouped at the beginning of the record.

6. What is a directory in the context of automated systems?

A. A list of file names

B. An index used to locate files at the beginning of the file

C. A document describing the content of the files

D. A storage system for physical records

Answer: B. An index used to locate files at the beginning of the file

Explanation: A directory is an index that helps locate files by calculating the likely position of a file on the storage medium, enabling quick access.

1. When was the International Standard Bibliographic Description (ISBD) first introduced?

A. 1971

B. 1969

C. 1973

D. 1975

Answer: B. 1969

Explanation: The ISBD dates back to 1969 when the IFLA Committee on Cataloguing sponsored an International Meeting of Cataloguing Experts.

2. What was the first ISBD standard published?

A. ISBD(G)

B. ISBD(M)

C. ISBD(A)

D. ISBD(C)

Answer: B. ISBD(M)

Explanation: The first ISBD standard published was the International Standard Bibliographic Description for Monographic Publications (ISBD(M)) in 1971.

3. When was the first standard edition of ISBD(M) revised and published?

A. 1971

B. 1973

C. 1974

D. 1978

Answer: C. 1974

Explanation: The first standard edition of ISBD(M) was revised and published in 1974 as the "First standard edition."

4. What was the purpose of developing the ISBD(G)?

A. To revise ISBD(M) to align with new cataloguing rules

B. To create a general international standard bibliographic description for most common types of library resources

C. To replace ISBD(M) entirely

D. To develop a standard for monographic publications

Answer: B. To create a general international standard bibliographic description for most common types of library resources

Explanation: The ISBD(G) was developed to provide a general international standard bibliographic description suitable for most common types of library resources.

5. When was the ISBD(G) published?

A. 1971

B. 1974

C. 1977

D. 1978

Answer: C. 1977

Explanation: The ISBD(G) was published in 1977 as a general international standard bibliographic description.

6. How did the ISBD(M) change following the introduction of ISBD(G)?

A. It was replaced by ISBD(G)

B. It was revised to align with ISBD(G)

C. It was expanded to include more types of library resources

D. It was discontinued

Answer: B. It was revised to align with ISBD(G)

Explanation: The ISBD(M) was revised to align with ISBD(G), and the "First standard edition revised" was published in 1978.

7. When was the International Standard Bibliographic Description (ISBD) first introduced?

A. 1969

B. 1971

C. 1973

D. 1975

Answer: A. 1969

Explanation: The ISBD dates back to 1969 when the IFLA Committee on Cataloguing sponsored an International Meeting of Cataloguing Experts.

8. What was the first ISBD published and when did it appear?

A. ISBD(G), published in 1977

B. ISBD(M), published in 1971

C. ISBD(M), revised in 1974

D. ISBD(G), revised in 1978

Answer: B. ISBD(M), published in 1971

Explanation: The first ISBD published was the International Standard Bibliographic Description for Monographic Publications (ISBD(M)), which appeared in 1971.

9. How did the ISBD(M) evolve following its initial publication?

A. It was adopted and used unchanged by many cataloguing committees

B. It was translated into several languages and incorporated into national rules

C. It was discarded in favor of the ISBD(G)

D. It remained the only standard without revisions

Answer: B. It was translated into several languages and incorporated into national rules

Explanation: After its publication, the ISBD(M) was adopted by national bibliographies, translated into several languages, and influenced national cataloguing rules.

10. What was the purpose of the ISBD(G) introduced in 1977?

A. To revise the ISBD(M) for monographic publications

B. To develop a general international standard for bibliographic description for common types of library resources

C. To replace the ISBD(M) with a new standard

D. To address comments from users of the ISBD(M)

Answer: B. To develop a general international standard for bibliographic description for common types of library resources

Explanation: The ISBD(G) was introduced to provide a general international standard for bibliographic description suitable for most common types of library resources.

11. When was the revised edition of the ISBD(M) published?

A. 1971

B. 1974

C. 1977

D. 1978

Answer: D. 1978

Explanation: The revised edition of the ISBD(M) was published in 1978, bringing it into line with the ISBD(G).

12. Which of the following ISBDs was specifically focused on serials?

A. ISBD (CM)

B. ISBD (A)

C. ISBD (S)

D. ISBD (PM)

Answer: C. ISBD (S)

Explanation: ISBD (S) was the specialized ISBD focused on serials.

13. What was the purpose of the ISBD Review Committee formed in 1981?

A. To create new ISBDs for emerging materials

B. To harmonize provisions among the ISBDs, improve examples, and make provisions more applicable to non-Roman scripts

C. To replace the ISBDs with a new standard

D. To review and update the ISBD only for non-book materials

Answer: B. To harmonize provisions among the ISBDs, improve examples, and make provisions more applicable to non-Roman scripts

Explanation: The ISBD Review Committee aimed to harmonize provisions among the ISBDs, improve examples, and make the provisions more applicable to materials published in non-Roman scripts.

14. What was one of the narrower objectives of the ISBD revision effort?

A. To add new formats to ISBD standards

B. To review the use of the equals sign

C. To incorporate new ISBDs for digital materials

D. To merge existing ISBDs into a single standard

Answer: B. To review the use of the equals sign

Explanation: One of the narrower objectives was to review the use of the equals sign in the ISBDs.

15. What was a major proposal regarding the ISBD(NBM) that came from specialist groups?

A. To add new types of materials to the standard

B. To include machine-readable data files as a format

C. To remove machine-readable data files as a format from the standard

D. To merge ISBD(NBM) with other ISBDs

Answer: C. To remove machine-readable data files as a format from the standard

Explanation: A significant proposal from specialist groups was to remove "machine-readable data files" as a format from the ISBD(NBM).

16. When was the consolidated edition of the ISBD published?

A. 1981

B. 1990

C. 2000

D. 2007

Answer: D. 2007

Explanation: The consolidated edition of the ISBD was published in 2007.

17. Who is responsible for maintaining the ISBD?

A. IFLA's Cataloguing Section

B. ISBD Review Committee

C. IFLA's ISBD Review Group

D. The Library of Congress

Answer: C. IFLA's ISBD Review Group

Explanation: The IFLA's ISBD Review Group is responsible for maintaining the ISBD.

18. How many areas of description does the ISBD prescribe?

A. Six

B. Seven

C. Eight

D. Nine

Answer: C. Eight

Explanation: The ISBD prescribes eight areas of description.

These eight areas are: 1) title and statement of responsibility area; Formats and Standards Library Cataloguing 5 6 2) edition area; 3) material or type of resource specific area (for example, the scale of a or the numbering of a periodical); 4) publication, production, distribution, etc., area; 5) physical

description area (for example: number of pages in a book or number of CDs issued as a unit); 6) series area; 7) notes area; and 8) resource identifier (e.g. ISBN, ISSN) and terms of availability area.

19. Which area of the ISBD description includes the title proper, general material designation, and statements of responsibility?

A. Area 1

B. Area 2

C. Area 4

D. Area 6

Answer: A. Area 1

Explanation: Area 1 of the ISBD description includes the title proper, general material designation (GMD), other title information, parallel title, and statements of responsibility.

20. What does Area 3 of the ISBD describe?

A. Title and statement of responsibility

B. Edition information

C. Material or type of resource specific details

D. Publication and production information

Answer: C. Material or type of resource specific details

Explanation: Area 3 covers material or type of resource specific details, such as the scale of a map or the numbering of a periodical.

21. Which area provides information about the physical description of a resource, such as the number of pages or CDs?

A. Area 5

B. Area 7

C. Area 2

D. Area 4

Answer: A. Area 5

Explanation: Area 5 provides the physical description of a resource, including details such as the number of pages or CDs.

22. What is included in the "resource identifier" area of the ISBD?

A. Series information

B. Title and statement of responsibility

C. ISBN, ISSN, and terms of availability

D. Edition information

Answer: C. ISBN, ISSN, and terms of availability

Explanation: The resource identifier area (Area 8) includes identifiers such as ISBN, ISSN, and terms of availability.

23. Why are standardised punctuation marks used in ISBD descriptions?

A. To enhance the aesthetic appearance of records

B. To identify and separate elements and areas, making records easier to interpret

C. To add additional information to records

D. To avoid the need for indexing

Answer: B. To identify and separate elements and areas, making records easier to interpret

Explanation: Standardised punctuation is used to identify and separate elements and areas, which helps in interpreting bibliographic records regardless of the language.

24. What was the IFLA Study Group on the Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records (FRBR) established to address?

A. Developing new cataloging tools

B. The functional requirements for bibliographic records

C. Updating the ISBD standards

D. Creating a universal cataloging language

Answer: B. The functional requirements for bibliographic records

Explanation: The IFLA Study Group on FRBR was established to address the functional requirements for bibliographic records.

25. When did the FRBR Study Group publish its Final Report?

A. 1995

B. 1998

C. 2000

D. 2004

Answer: B. 1998

Explanation: The FRBR Study Group published its Final Report in 1998.

26. What did the ISBD Review Group aim to clarify regarding area 6 in ISBD(CR)?

A. Its purpose and relation with area 1

B. The compatibility of sources of information

C. The common phrasing for area 6

D. The transcription methods for electronic resources

Answer: A. Its purpose and relation with area 1

Explanation: The ISBD Review Group aimed to clarify the purpose of area 6 and its relationship with area 1 in ISBD(CR) and ISSN.

27. Which ISBDs were examined for compatibility of sources of information in relation to area 6 and area 1?

A. ISBD(M) and ISBD(S)

B. ISBD(CR) and ISSN

C. ISBD(AVM) and ISBD(PM)

D. ISBD(NBM) and ISBD(A)

Answer: B. ISBD(CR) and ISSN

Explanation: The ISBD Review Group examined the compatibility of sources of information in ISBD(CR) and ISSN.

28. What was one of the objectives of the ISBD Review Group?

A. To develop new cataloging software

B. To propose a common phrasing for area 6 in all ISBDs

C. To create a new standard for bibliographic records

D. To review the use of electronic resources

Answer: B. To propose a common phrasing for area 6 in all ISBDs

Explanation: One of the objectives of the ISBD Review Group was to propose a common phrasing for area 6 in all ISBDs.

29. What is the purpose of the ISO-2709 standard?

A. To describe the processing format within systems

B. To standardize communication between data processing systems

C. To create a new bibliographic record format

D. To record data on paper forms

Answer: B. To standardize communication between data processing systems

Explanation: ISO-2709 describes a structure for communication between data processing systems, not for processing formats within systems.

30. What does the ISO-2709 format, also known as MARC, consist of?

A. Record marker, data directory, and variable-length data fields

B. Fixed-length records and a data directory

C. Variable-length data fields only

D. Record label, data fields, and bibliographic fields

Answer: A. Record marker, data directory, and variable-length data fields

Explanation: The ISO-2709 format consists of a record marker, data directory, and variable-length data fields.

31. What is included in the record label section of an ISO-2709 record?

A. Data fields and subfields

B. Directory entries and field tags

C. Record length and base address, plus data elements for indicators and subfield identifiers

D. Field separators and identifiers

Answer: C. Record length and base address, plus data elements for indicators and subfield identifiers

Explanation: The record label section includes the record length, base address, and data elements for indicators and subfield identifiers.

32. What information does the directory in an ISO-2709 record provide?

A. The record's length and base address

B. The entry positions to the fields and field tags

C. The string containing all field and subfield data

D. The data processing format

Answer: B. The entry positions to the fields and field tags

Explanation: The directory provides entry positions to the fields and field tags in the record.

33. How many kinds of fields are there in the ISO-2709 record, and what are they?

A. Two: Record identifier fields and bibliographic fields

B. Three: Record identifier fields, reserved fields, and bibliographic fields

C. Four: Record identifier fields, reserved fields, bibliographic fields, and data fields

D. Five: Record identifier fields, reserved fields, bibliographic fields, data fields, and subfields

Answer: B. Three: Record identifier fields, reserved fields, and bibliographic fields

Explanation: The ISO-2709 record contains three kinds of fields: record identifier fields, reserved fields, and bibliographic fields.

34. What does the indicator in bibliographic fields generally provide?

A. The length of the field

B. Information about the contents of the field and its relationship to other fields

C. The starting character position of the field

D. A delimiter and identifying code

Answer: B. Information about the contents of the field and its relationship to other fields

Explanation: The indicator provides information about the contents of the field and its relationship to other fields.

35. What is the tag range for bibliographic fields in an ISO-2709 record?

A. 001-009 and 00A to ZZZ

B. 010-999 and 0AA to ZZZ

C. 002-009 and 00A to ZZZ

D. 000-099 and 0AA to ZZZ

Answer: B. 010-999 and 0AA to ZZZ

Explanation: Bibliographic fields are in the range 010-999 and 0AA to ZZZ.

36. What is the purpose of the "Signpost" in a MARC record?

A. To provide a visual representation of the record

B. To guide the computer in interpreting bibliographic information on a catalogue record

C. To list the tags used in a MARC record

D. To display the record's length and base address

Answer: B. To guide the computer in interpreting bibliographic information on a catalogue record

Explanation: The Signpost in a MARC record helps the computer interpret the bibliographic information on the catalogue record.

37. How are MARC bibliographic records divided?

A. By pages and chapters

B. Into fields and subfields

C. By title and author

D. Into sections and subsections

Answer: B. Into fields and subfields

Explanation: MARC bibliographic records are divided into fields, which are further subdivided into one or more subfields.

38. What is the purpose of a "tag" in a MARC record?

A. To provide the length of the record

B. To represent each field in a MARC record

C. To display the record's publication date

D. To identify the record's directory entry

Answer: B. To represent each field in a MARC record

Explanation: A tag represents each field in a MARC record.

39. What are indicators in a MARC record, and what values do they have?

A. Indicators are field tags, and they have values from 0 to 9

B. Indicators are one-digit numbers that provide additional information about the field and can be from 0 to 9

C. Indicators are used to separate fields and have values from 1 to 5

D. Indicators are character positions used to define field length and have values from A to Z

Answer: B. Indicators are one-digit numbers that provide additional information about the field and can be from 0 to 9

Explanation: Indicators are one-digit numbers used to provide additional information about the field, and they range from 0 to 9.

40. What happens if an indicator position is not used in a MARC record?

A. The record is marked as incomplete

B. The indicator is defined as "undefined" and marked by the character position "#"

C. The record's data is omitted from the record

D. The indicator is replaced by a default value of 5

Answer: B. The indicator is defined as "undefined" and marked by the character position "#"

Explanation: If an indicator position is not used, it is referred to as "undefined" and marked by the character position "#".

41. What are the three main elements of a USMARC record?

A. Record structure, data content, and indexing

B. Record structure, content designation, and data content

C. Field tags, indicators, and subfields

D. Leader, directory, and variable fields

Answer: B. Record structure, content designation, and data content

Explanation: A USMARC record involves the record structure, content designation, and data content.

42. What does the content designation in USMARC formats help with?

A. Displaying data in the user interface

B. Identifying and characterizing data elements within a record and supporting their manipulation

C. Printing records on paper

D. Formatting records for online databases

Answer: B. Identifying and characterizing data elements within a record and supporting their manipulation

Explanation: Content designation involves codes and conventions to identify and characterize data elements within a record, supporting their manipulation.

43. What is the purpose of USMARC formats?

A. To facilitate data entry in library catalogs

B. To communicate catalogue records to other institutions and facilitate exchange of bibliographic information on magnetic tape

C. To provide user-friendly interfaces for library systems

D. To standardize book cover designs

Answer: B. To communicate catalogue records to other institutions and facilitate exchange of bibliographic information on magnetic tape

Explanation: USMARC formats were developed to enable communication of catalogue records to other institutions and facilitate bibliographic information exchange on magnetic tape.

44. What are the three main sections of a USMARC record?

A. Leader, directory, and variable fields

B. Title, author, and publication date

C. Author, subject, and call number

D. Index, bibliography, and appendix

Answer: A. Leader, directory, and variable fields

Explanation: A USMARC record consists of the leader, directory, and variable fields.

45. What does the leader section of a USMARC record contain?

A. Bibliographic data and publication information

B. Coded values that define parameters for processing the record, fixed in length (24 characters)

C. Indexes and cross-references

D. Detailed descriptions of variable fields

Answer: B. Coded values that define parameters for processing the record, fixed in length (24 characters)

Explanation: The leader consists of coded values defining parameters for processing the record and is fixed in length (24 characters).

46. What information does the directory section of a USMARC record include?

A. Publication history and author details

B. Tag, starting location, and length of each field within the record

C. User access rights and record permissions

D. Data about the physical condition of the item

Answer: B. Tag, starting location, and length of each field within the record

Explanation: The directory contains the tag, starting location, and length of each field within the record.

47. How are variable control fields and variable data fields distinguished in USMARC formats?

A. By their length

B. By their content only

C. By their structure

D. By their location in the record

Answer: C. By their structure

Explanation: Variable control fields and variable data fields are distinguished by their structure in USMARC formats.

48. What was the primary purpose of developing the UKMARC format?

A. To support online library catalogs

B. To facilitate the production of the printed British National Bibliography (BNB)

C. To standardize library book classifications

D. To develop digital library management systems

Answer: B. To facilitate the production of the printed British National Bibliography (BNB)

Explanation: The UKMARC format was developed primarily to facilitate the production of the printed British National Bibliography (BNB) and closely reflects the cataloguing practices of the British Library.

49. What was the original MARC format developed by the Library of Congress intended to investigate?

A. The efficiency of cataloging practices

B. The feasibility of producing catalogue data in machine-readable form

C. The design of new library software

D. The creation of a universal bibliographic standard

Answer: B. The feasibility of producing catalogue data in machine-readable form

Explanation: The original MARC format was developed to investigate the feasibility of producing catalogue data in machine-readable form through the MARC I pilot project.

50. When did the British National Bibliography introduce a MARC tape service for current British books?

A. 1960

B. 1969

C. 1975

D. 1980

Answer: B. 1969

Explanation: In 1969, the British National Bibliography introduced a MARC tape service for current British books and published a machine-readable version of the weekly printed BNB.

51. How did the UKMARC format evolve by 1975?

A. It became obsolete

B. It was only used for BNB records

C. It became a national communications format and was used for various applications

D. It was replaced by the USMARC format

Answer: C. It became a national communications format and was used for various applications

Explanation: By 1975, UKMARC had evolved to become a national communications format and was used beyond just the production of records for the BNB.

52. What was the BNB MARC Project set up to investigate?

A. New cataloging rules

B. The feasibility of producing machine-readable bibliographic records to simplify the BNB

C. The design of library catalog systems

D. The implementation of digital libraries

Answer: B. The feasibility of producing machine-readable bibliographic records to simplify the BNB

Explanation: The BNB MARC Project was set up to examine whether the production of the printed British National Bibliography (BNB) could be simplified by using machine-readable bibliographic records.

53. What was the significance of the second edition of UKMARC published in 1980?

A. It introduced new library software

B. It standardized procedures for describing books and items, and for headings and references

C. It replaced the MARC format

D. It established new cataloging rules unrelated to AACR2

Answer: B. It standardized procedures for describing books and items, and for headings and references

Explanation: The second edition of the UKMARC Manual published in 1980 was significant for standardizing procedures for describing books and other items, constructing headings and references, and addressing machine processing needs.

54. When did the British Library decide to adopt AACR2, and how did it affect UKMARC?

A. 1975; it led to a complete overhaul of UKMARC

B. 1981; necessary changes were incorporated into the second edition of UKMARC

C. 1988; no changes were made to UKMARC

D. 1994; it led to the replacement of UKMARC

Answer: B. 1981; necessary changes were incorporated into the second edition of UKMARC

Explanation: The British Library decided to adopt AACR2 with effect from 1981, and the necessary changes to UKMARC were incorporated into the second edition of the UKMARC Manual published in 1980.

55. What was addressed in the 1988 revision of AACR2?

A. The introduction of new cataloging software

B. A set of amendments known as Amendments 1993

C. A comprehensive update of UKMARC

D. Clarifications and slight changes to existing rules

Answer: D. Clarifications and slight changes to existing rules

Explanation: The 1988 revision of AACR2 included a set of amendments known as Amendments 1993, which comprised clarifications and slight changes to existing rules applied to BNB MARC records.

56. What were Amendments 1993, and when were they published?

A. New cataloging rules published in 1988

B. Clarifications and slight changes to existing rules published in 1994

C. A new edition of UKMARC published in 1980

D. Major revisions to AACR2 published in 1978

Answer: B. Clarifications and slight changes to existing rules published in 1994

Explanation: Amendments 1993 were a set of clarifications and slight changes to existing rules published in 1994, which the British Library applied to BNB MARC records.

57. What are the two types of fields in UKMARC records?

A. Fixed length fields and indexed fields

B. Fixed length fields and variable-length fields

C. Coded fields and variable fields

D. Control fields and bibliographic fields

Answer: B. Fixed length fields and variable-length fields

Explanation: Fixed length fields contain coded characters in specific positions to convey information about the item, while variable-length fields do not depend on specific character positions and include data like titles.

58. What are the functional blocks or areas in UKMARC records used for?

A. To format data for electronic storage

B. To organize data according to its function in a traditional catalogue record

C. To separate bibliographic data from control data

D. To index records for faster retrieval

Answer: B. To organize data according to its function in a traditional catalogue record

Explanation: Functional blocks or areas in UKMARC records organize data according to its function, such as title, physical description, and subject access points, in a traditional catalogue record.

59. Which fields are categorized under control fields in UKMARC records?

A. 245-299

B. 600-699

C. 001-009

D. 800-899

Answer: C. 001-009

Explanation: Fields 001-009 are termed control fields in UKMARC records, containing either a single data element or a series of fixed-length data elements identified by their relative character position.

60. What do indicators in UKMARC records signify?

A. The length of the field

B. The data content of the field

C. The relationship between the field and other fields, and how the data should be manipulated

D. The format of the data in the field

Answer: C. The relationship between the field and other fields, and how the data should be manipulated

Explanation: Indicators in UKMARC records provide information about the relationship between fields and how the data should be manipulated for cataloguing purposes.

61. What is the role of subfield codes in UKMARC records?

A. To separate fields within a record

B. To distinguish data elements within a field that require separate manipulation

C. To denote the record's total length

D. To identify control fields

Answer: B. To distinguish data elements within a field that require separate manipulation

Explanation: Subfield codes in UKMARC records are used to distinguish data elements within a field that might require separate manipulation.

62. How are levels used in UKMARC records, and what is their significance?

A. To indicate different types of fields

B. To show that a work within a publication has been catalogued as a bibliographic entity in its own right

C. To separate data for internal and external use

D. To format the data for electronic storage

Answer: B. To show that a work within a publication has been catalogued as a bibliographic entity in its own right

Explanation: Levels are used to show that a work included within a publication has been catalogued as a separate bibliographic entity, though levels are not used in BNBMARC records.

63. What significant change did the British Library make in 2000 regarding cataloguing formats?

A. They adopted UKMARC.

B. They transitioned to MARC 21.

C. They developed a new national cataloguing format.

D. They discontinued the use of MARC formats.

Answer: B. They transitioned to MARC 21.

Explanation: In 2000, the British Library decided to transition from UKMARC to the MARC 21 bibliographic format.

64. Which MARC 21 format provides details for the creation and design of bibliographic records?

A. Format for Authority Data

B. Format for Holdings Data

C. Format for Bibliographic Data

D. Format for Community Information Data

Answer: C. Format for Bibliographic Data

Explanation: The Format for Bibliographic Data in MARC 21 provides details for the creation and design of bibliographic records, including data elements, codes, tags, and indicators.

65. What does the MARC 21 Format for Authority Data include?

A. Codes and indicators for classification data

B. Codes and code values for accepted headings for authority control

C. Information on holdings of single part and multi-part items

D. Coding for community non-bibliographic information

Answer: B. Codes and code values for accepted headings for authority control

Explanation: The Format for Authority Data includes codes and code values for accepted and used headings for authority control, covering personal and corporate names as well as subjects.

66. What purpose does the MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data serve?

A. It provides codes and indicators for classification data.

B. It includes codes, tags, and indicators for providing holdings information.

C. It offers details for creating bibliographic records.

D. It codes community non-bibliographic information.

Answer: B. It includes codes, tags, and indicators for providing holdings information.

Explanation: The Format for Holdings Data includes codes, tags, and indicators to provide information on holdings of single-part and multi-part items, as well as serial items.

67. Which MARC 21 format is designed for coding community non-bibliographic information?

A. Format for Bibliographic Data

B. Format for Authority Data

C. Format for Classification Data

D. Format for Community Information Data

Answer: D. Format for Community Information Data

Explanation: The Format for Community Information Data is suitable for coding community non-bibliographic information, including details about organizations, events, programs, or services.

68. Which MARC 21 formats are most commonly used in cataloguing in libraries?

A. Format for Community Information Data and Format for Classification Data

B. Format for Authority Data and Format for Classification Data

C. Format for Bibliographic Data, Format for Authority Data, and Format for Holdings Data

D. Format for Bibliographic Data and Format for Community Information Data

Answer: C. Format for Bibliographic Data, Format for Authority Data, and Format for Holdings Data

Explanation: The Format for Bibliographic Data, Format for Authority Data, and Format for Holdings Data are the most commonly used in cataloguing in libraries.

69. What is a key terminology difference between USMARC and UK MARC formats?

A. "Leader" in USMARC vs. "Record label" in UK MARC

B. "Bibliographic level" in USMARC vs. "Class of record" in UK MARC

C. Record control number (LC card number vs. ISBN)

D. All of the above

Answer: D. All of the above

Explanation: There are several key terminology differences between USMARC and UK MARC formats, including "Leader" vs. "Record label," "Bibliographic level" vs. "Class of record," and differences in record control numbers.

70. What was the primary purpose of UNIMARC as conceived by IFLA?

A. To standardize the calculation of fixed field positions

B. To facilitate international exchange of data in machine-readable form

C. To replace USMARC and UK MARC formats

D. To provide a handbook for cataloguing monographs and serials

Answer: B. To facilitate international exchange of data in machine-readable form

Explanation: The primary purpose of UNIMARC was to facilitate the international exchange of data in machine-readable form between national bibliographic agencies.

71. When was the first edition of UNIMARC published by IFLA?

A. 1975

B. 1977

C. 1980

D. 1983

Answer: B. 1977

Explanation: The first edition of UNIMARC was published by IFLA in 1977.

72. Which format's record control number was LC card number?

A. USMARC

B. UK MARC

C. UNIMARC

D. Both USMARC and UK MARC

Answer: A. USMARC

Explanation: In USMARC, the record control number used is the LC card number.

73. What was the focus of the UNIMARC editions and handbook published in the 1980s?

A. Calculation of fixed field positions

B. Standardization of bibliographic information

C. Cataloguing of monographs and serials

D. Development of a new MARC format

Answer: C. Cataloguing of monographs and serials

Explanation: The UNIMARC editions and handbook primarily focused on the cataloguing of monographs and serials, reflecting international progress in the standardization of bibliographic information.

74. Why was the UNIMARC Manual expanded in 1987?

A. To cover documents other than monographs and serials

B. To align with the latest version of MARC

C. To improve the calculation of fixed field positions

D. To simplify the record structure

Answer: A. To cover documents other than monographs and serials

Explanation: The UNIMARC Manual was expanded in 1987 to cover documents other than monographs and serials.

75. Who maintains the UNIMARC format?

A. Library of Congress

B. British Library

C. IFLA and UBCIM office

D. National Library of Canada

Answer: C. IFLA and UBCIM office

Explanation: The UNIMARC format is maintained by IFLA and the UBCIM office.

76. What are the three elements of the bibliographic record in the UNIMARC format?

A. Record label, directory, and variable fields

B. Record structure, content designation, and data content

C. Fixed fields, variable fields, and indicators

D. Title, author, and publication details

Answer: B. Record structure, content designation, and data content

Explanation: The UNIMARC format involves three elements of the bibliographic record: record structure, content designation, and data content.

77. What led to the convening of the International Symposium on Bibliographic Exchange Formats in April 1978?

A. The need to standardize cataloguing practices

B. The desire to establish optimum compatibility between existing bibliographic exchange formats

C. The development of a new MARC format

D. The publication of the ISBD standards

Answer: B. The desire to establish optimum compatibility between existing bibliographic exchange formats

Explanation: The International Symposium on Bibliographic Exchange Formats was convened to study the desirability and feasibility of establishing optimum compatibility between existing bibliographic exchange formats.

78. Who organized the International Symposium on Bibliographic Exchange Formats?

A. The Library of Congress

B. The British Library

C. UNISIST International Centre for Bibliographic Description, IFLA, ISO, and International Council of Scientific Unions Abstracting Board

D. National Library of Canada

Answer: C. UNISIST International Centre for Bibliographic Description, IFLA, ISO, and International Council of Scientific Unions Abstracting Board

Explanation: The Symposium was organized by UNISIST International Centre for Bibliographic Description in collaboration with IFLA, ISO, and the International Council of Scientific Unions Abstracting Board.

79. When was the first edition of CCF published?

A. 1980

B. 1982

C. 1984

D. 1988

Answer: C. 1984

Explanation: The first edition of CCF was published in 1984.

80. What did the publication "Implementation notes for users of CCF" provide?

A. Detailed technical specifications of CCF

B. A guide for the benefit of CCF users

C. An overview of bibliographic exchange formats

D. Instructions for using MARC formats

Answer: B. A guide for the benefit of CCF users

Explanation: The publication entitled "Implementation notes for users of CCF" served as a guide for the benefit of CCF users.

81. What are the two volumes of the 3rd edition of CCF published by UNESCO/PGI?

A. CCF (A): Abstracting Information and CCF (B): Bibliographic Information

B. CCF (B): Bibliographic Information and CCF (F): Factual

C. CCF (F): Factual and CCF (C): Cataloguing Information

D. CCF (D): Digital Information and CCF (E): Electronic Formats

Answer: B. CCF (B): Bibliographic Information and CCF (F): Factual

Explanation: The 3rd edition of CCF published by UNESCO/PGI comprises two volumes: CCF (B): Bibliographic Information and CCF (F): Factual.

82. How many major parts does a Common Communication Format (CCF) record consist of?

A. Three

B. Four

C. Five

D. Six

Answer: B. Four

Explanation: A CCF record consists of four major parts: Record Label, Directory, Datafields, and Record Separator Directory.

83. What does the directory in a CCF record contain?

A. Fixed-length data elements and control numbers

B. A variable number of fourteen-character entries, terminated by a field separator character

C. Bibliographic fields and subfields

D. Indicators and subfield identifiers

Answer: B. A variable number of fourteen-character entries, terminated by a field separator character

Explanation: The directory in a CCF record contains a variable number of fourteen-character entries and is terminated by a field separator character.

84. What are the five parts of each directory entry in a CCF record?

A. Tag, Length of datafield, Starting character position, Subfield identifier, Occurrence identifier

B. Tag, Length of datafield, Starting character position, Segment identifier, Occurrence identifier

C. Tag, Length of datafield, Subfield identifier, Occurrence identifier, Record label

D. Tag, Length of datafield, Starting character position, Record label, Segment identifier

Answer: B. Tag, Length of datafield, Starting character position, Segment identifier, Occurrence identifier

Explanation: Each directory entry in a CCF record is divided into five parts: Tag, Length of datafield, Starting character position, Segment identifier, and Occurrence identifier.

85. What does a datafield in a CCF record consist of?

A. Fixed-length fields and control numbers

B. Indicators, one or more subfields each preceded by a subfield identifier, and a tag

C. Data elements and subfield codes

D. Record label and directory entries

Answer: B. Indicators, one or more subfields each preceded by a subfield identifier, and a tag

Explanation: A datafield in a CCF record consists of indicators, one or more subfields each preceded by a subfield identifier, and a tag.

86. How is a single directory entry organized in a CCF record?

A. Tag (5 characters), Length of datafield (5 characters), Starting character position (5 characters), Segment identifier (1 character), Occurrence identifier (1 character)

B. Tag (3 characters), Length of datafield (5 characters), Starting character position (5 characters), Segment identifier (1 character), Occurrence identifier (1 character)

C. Tag (3 characters), Length of datafield (3 characters), Starting character position (5 characters), Segment identifier (1 character), Occurrence identifier (2 characters)

D. Tag (3 characters), Length of datafield (7 characters), Starting character position (5 characters), Segment identifier (2 characters), Occurrence identifier (1 character)

Answer: B. Tag (3 characters), Length of datafield (5 characters), Starting character position (5 characters), Segment identifier (1 character), Occurrence identifier (1 character)

Explanation: A single directory entry in a CCF record is organized as follows: Tag (3 characters), Length of datafield (5 characters), Starting character position (5 characters), Segment identifier (1 character), and Occurrence identifier (1 character).

87. What was the initial bibliographic standard developed by the Indian Standards Institution (now Bureau of Indian Standards) in 1963 intended for?

A. Computerized systems

B. Non-computerized systems

C. International bibliographic exchange

D. Digital records

Answer: B. Non-computerized systems

Explanation: The initial bibliographic standard developed in 1963 was intended for use in non-computerized systems.

88. What revision of the Indian bibliographic standard appeared in 1979, and what was suggested as a substitute format?

A. ISBD (International Standard Bibliographic Description) was suggested as a substitute format

B. CCF (Common Communication Format) was suggested as a substitute format

C. MARC 21 was suggested as a substitute format

D. UNIMARC was suggested as a substitute format

Answer: A. ISBD (International Standard Bibliographic Description) was suggested as a substitute format

Explanation: The 1979 revision suggested ISBD as a substitute format to be adopted by agencies willing to do so.

89. What significant development occurred during the sixteenth Indian Standards Convention held in Bhopal in October 1975?

A. Introduction of MARC formats

B. Discussion on standardization of bibliographic information in the context of machine-readable records

C. Launch of UNIMARC

D. Adoption of CCF

Answer: B. Discussion on standardization of bibliographic information in the context of machine-readable records

Explanation: The convention discussed the issue of standardization of bibliographic information in the context of machine-readable records.

90. What was the title and publication year of the standard developed by ISI in July 1986, and what format did it conform to?

A. IS: 11370-1985, Guide for data element and record format for computer-based bibliographic description, conforming to ISO 2709-1981

B. IS: 12345-1985, Guide for bibliographic description, conforming to ISO 2709-1981

C. IS: 11370-1986, Guide for machine-readable records, conforming to ISBD

D. IS: 56789-1985, Data element and record format guide, conforming to MARC 21

Answer: A. IS: 11370-1985, Guide for data element and record format for computer-based bibliographic description, conforming to ISO 2709-1981

Explanation: The standard IS: 11370-1985 titled 'Guide for data element and record format for computer-based bibliographic description of different kinds of documents' was published in July 1986 and conforms to ISO 2709-1981.

BLI 223 BLOCK 2 UNIT 8 CATALOGUING OFNON-BOOK MATERIAL

1. What were the most primitive media for recording knowledge?

A. Stones, rocks, clay tablets, parchment, vellum, papyrus, and palm leaf

B. Paper and parchment

C. Microforms and digital media

D. Clay tablets and microphotography

Answer: A. Stones, rocks, clay tablets, parchment, vellum, papyrus, and palm leaf

Explanation: The most primitive media for recording knowledge included stones, rocks, clay tablets, parchment, vellum, papyrus, and palm leaf.

2. What medium is the book in paper form the outcome of?

A. The printing press of John Gutenberg

B. The invention of microphotography

C. The development of digital media

D. The use of palm leaf

Answer: A. The printing press of John Gutenberg

Explanation: The book in paper medium is the outcome of the printing press of John Gutenberg.

3. When did the advent of microforms or non-book material occur?

A. 1450

B. 1953

C. 1980

D. 1900

Answer: B. 1953

Explanation: The advent of microforms or non-book material dates to 1953 with the invention of microphotography.

4. How does Webster's Third New International Dictionary define "non-book"?

A. A manuscript, microfilm, or map

B. A book or another library holding

C. Something other than a book; being a manuscript, microfilm, map, or other library holding that is not a book

D. A special holding in a library

Answer: C. Something other than a book; being a manuscript, microfilm, map, or other library holding that is not a book

Explanation: Webster's Third New International Dictionary defines "non-book" as something other than a book; being a manuscript, microfilm, map, or other library holding that is not a book.

5. According to Harrold's Librarian's Glossary, what are considered Non-Book Materials (NBM)?

A. Only audio-visual materials

B. Manuscripts and maps

C. All materials in a library

D. Audio-visual materials, vertical file materials, microforms, or computer software

Answer: D. Audio-visual materials, vertical file materials, microforms, or computer software

Explanation: Harrold's Librarian's Glossary describes NBM as those library materials which come within the definition of special holdings, i.e., audio-visual materials, vertical file materials, microforms, or computer software.

6. Which of the following is a type of cartographic material?

A. Sound cassette

B. Relief model

C. Art original

D. Video disc

Answer: B. Relief model

Explanation: Relief model is listed as a type of cartographic material.

7. What type of NBM is classified under "Sound Recordings"?

A. Space sensing image

B. Sound disc

C. Video cassette

D. Microfiche

Answer: B. Sound disc

Explanation: Sound disc is classified under sound recordings.

8. Which type of NBM falls under "Motion Pictures and Video Recordings"?

A. Ariel chart

B. Video cassette

C. Photograph

D. Microfilm

Answer: B. Video cassette

Explanation: Video cassette is listed under motion pictures and video recordings.

9. What is an example of a "Three-Dimensional Artefact and Realia"?

A. Slide

B. Microfilm cartridge

C. Art print

D. Diorama

Answer: D. Diorama

Explanation: Diorama is an example of a three-dimensional artefact and realia.

10. Which item is considered a "Graphic Material"?

A. Program file

B. Photograph

C. Sound cartridge

D. Atlas

Answer: B. Photograph

Explanation: Photograph is listed as a type of graphic material.

11. What type of NBM is classified under "Microform"?

A. Microfiche

B. Plan

C. Miniature score

D. Soundtrack film reel

Answer: A. Microfiche

Explanation: Microfiche is classified under microform.

12. What is one of the special problems in cataloguing NBM according to Eric J. Hunter?

A. Lack of subject knowledge

B. Frequent variation in physical forms

C. High costs

D. Difficulty in locating NBM

Answer: B. Frequent variation in physical forms

Explanation: Eric J. Hunter pointed out the specific problem of frequent variation in physical forms when cataloguing NBM.

13. According to John Horner, what is one possible problem in cataloguing NBM?

A. Lack of shelf space

B. Difficulty in transporting NBM

C. Machinery may be needed to use the documents

D. Difficulty in finding NBM

Answer: C. Machinery may be needed to use the documents

Explanation: John Horner discussed that machinery may be needed to use the documents as one of the possible problems in cataloguing NBM.

14. Why might special subject knowledge be necessary for cataloguing NBM?

A. To ensure proper shelving

B. To maintain NBM in physical form

C. To catalogue the materials thoroughly and quickly

D. To prevent damage during cataloguing

Answer: C. To catalogue the materials thoroughly and quickly

Explanation: Special subject knowledge and knowledge of relevant rules in the catalogue code may be needed to catalogue the materials thoroughly and quickly.

15. What makes NBM materials potentially more challenging to catalogue than books?

A. They are less durable

B. They require less detailed cataloguing

C. They may be more fragile, rare, and expensive

D. They are more readily available

Answer: C. They may be more fragile, rare, and expensive

Explanation: NBM materials may be more fragile, rare, and expensive than normal book-form materials, making them potentially more challenging to catalogue.

16. How has the publication of AACR-2 and its amendments facilitated the cataloguing of NBM?

A. By reducing cataloguing time

B. By providing clear and standardized cataloguing guidelines

C. By eliminating the need for special knowledge

D. By increasing the availability of cataloguing tools

Answer: B. By providing clear and standardized cataloguing guidelines

Explanation: The publication of AACR-2, its amendments, and AACR-2002 has made the cataloguing of NBM easy, clear, and standardized.

17. What might be necessary to compile due to the variety of types of NBM material?

A. Digital catalogues

B. One's own aids

C. Multiple copies of NBM

D. Detailed author indexes

Answer: B. One's own aids

Explanation: It may be necessary to compile one's own aids because of the variety of the type of NBM material.

18. What is one benefit of proper cataloguing of NBM in libraries?

A. Increased library membership

B. Facilitated use of NBM in libraries

C. Higher revenue from NBM

D. Reduced need for physical space

Answer: B. Facilitated use of NBM in libraries

Explanation: Proper cataloguing facilitates the use of NBM in libraries.

19. According to AACR-2, what is the term used for the source from which a bibliographic description is prepared?

A. Preferred source of information

B. Chief source of information

C. Primary bibliographic source

D. Main cataloguing source

Answer: B. Chief source of information

Explanation: The chief source of information is the term used for the source from which a bibliographic description is prepared.

20. What is the chief source of information for cartographic materials according to AACR-2?

A. Title page

B. Container or case

C. The cartographic item itself

D. Publisher information

Answer: C. The cartographic item itself

Explanation: For cartographic materials, the cartographic item itself is the chief source of information.

21. For manuscripts, what are the sources of information used in describing the publication?

A. Title page and index

B. Colophon and appendix

C. Title page and colophon

D. Manuscript itself and container

Answer: C. Title page and colophon

Explanation: For manuscripts, the title page and colophon are the sources of information used in describing the publication.

Chief Source of Information

Type of Materials	**Sources**
Cartographic materials	Cartographic item itself
	Container or case, the cradle, and stand of globe, etc.
Manuscripts	Title page and Colophon
Music	Title Page
Sound recordings	
Disc	Label
Tape (open reel-to-reel)	Reel and label
Tape Cassette	Cassette label
Tape Cartridge	Cartridge and label
Sound recording on film	Container and label
Motion picture and video	Film itself and its container
Graphic Materials	Item itself including any labels and the container
Computer files	Internal user label
	Information issued by publisher, creator, etc.
Three-dimensional artefacts and Realia	Object itself with any accompanying textual material and container
Microforms	Title frame

22. What is the chief source of information for sound recordings on film?

A. Film container

B. Label and disc

C. Container and label

D. Publisher information

Answer: C. Container and label

Explanation: For sound recordings on film, the chief source of information is the container and label.

23. According to AACR-2, where is the chief source of information for microforms typically found?

A. On the label

B. In the accompanying textual material

C. On the title frame

D. In the publisher's information

Answer: C. On the title frame

Explanation: The chief source of information for microforms is typically found on the title frame.

24. For graphic materials, what serves as the chief source of information?

A. The item itself including any labels and the container

B. Publisher's catalog

C. External documentation

D. Title page

Answer: A. The item itself including any labels and the container

Explanation: For graphic materials, the chief source of information is the item itself including any labels and the container.

25. When cataloguing computer files, what is considered the chief source of information?

A. Publisher's website

B. Title page of the manual

C. Internal user label and information issued by the publisher, creator, etc.

D. External packaging

Answer: C. Internal user label and information issued by the publisher, creator, etc.

Explanation: The chief source of information for computer files includes the internal user label and information issued by the publisher, creator, etc.

26. What is the chief source of information for three-dimensional artefacts and realia?

A. External documentation

B. Object itself with any accompanying textual material and container

C. Title page of the accompanying manual

D. Publisher's catalog

Answer: B. Object itself with any accompanying textual material and container

Explanation: The chief source of information for three-dimensional artefacts and realia is the object itself with any accompanying textual material and container.

27. What is the use of parentheses in cataloguing?

A. To indicate accompanying materials

B. To enclose physical details of accompanying material

C. To mark the start of a new section

D. To denote editorial comments

Answer: B. To enclose physical details of accompanying material

Explanation: Parentheses are used to enclose physical details of accompanying material.

28. When cataloguing a data file, what information is enclosed in parentheses?

A. Title and author

B. Number of logical records and programming language

C. Publisher and publication date

D. Number of pages and chapters

Answer: B. Number of logical records and programming language

Explanation: Parentheses are used to enclose the number of logical records after the designation for a data file and the programming language for a program file.

29. How is the plus sign (+) used in cataloguing?

A. To indicate a new section

B. To precede a statement of accompanying material

C. To denote an addition to the title

D. To mark editorial comments

Answer: B. To precede a statement of accompanying material

Explanation: The plus sign (+) precedes a statement of accompanying material.

30. What does the plus sign (+) indicate when giving the declination of the center of a celestial chart?

A. The Southern Hemisphere

B. The Western Hemisphere

C. The Northern Hemisphere

D. The Eastern Hemisphere

Answer: C. The Northern Hemisphere

Explanation: The plus sign (+) is used to indicate the Northern Hemisphere when giving the declination of the center of a celestial chart.

31. How are square brackets [ ] used in cataloguing?

A. To mark the start of a new section

B. To denote editorial comments

C. To enclose information taken from outside the prescribed source or sources

D. To indicate accompanying materials

Answer: C. To enclose information taken from outside the prescribed source or sources

Explanation: Square brackets [ ] are used to enclose information taken from outside the prescribed source or sources.

32. What do square brackets [ ] enclose in cataloguing?

A. Editorial comments

B. General material designation

C. Physical details of accompanying material

D. Title and author information

Answer: B. General material designation

Explanation: Square brackets [ ] are used to enclose the general material designation.

33. What comprises the main structure of the bibliographic entry according to AACR 2R?

A. Title, author, and publisher

B. Heading, description, and subject description

C. Introduction, body, and conclusion

D. Title, publication date, and page numbers

Answer: B. Heading, description, and subject description

Explanation: The main structure of the bibliographic entry comprises the heading, the description, and the subject description.

34. What is the purpose of the first level (1.OD1) in bibliographic description according to AACR 2R?

A. For major-item entries in catalogues

B. For entries with detailed descriptions

C. For minor-item entries and catalogues with a policy of minimum description

D. For entries with supplementary materials

Answer: C. For minor-item entries and catalogues with a policy of minimum description

Explanation: The first level (1.OD1) was designed for minor-item entries and for catalogues with a policy of minimum description.

27. What is the use of parentheses in cataloguing?

A. To indicate accompanying materials

B. To enclose physical details of accompanying material

C. To mark the start of a new section

D. To denote editorial comments

Answer: B. To enclose physical details of accompanying material

Explanation: Parentheses are used to enclose physical details of accompanying material.

28. When cataloguing a data file, what information is enclosed in parentheses?

A. Title and author

B. Number of logical records and programming language

C. Publisher and publication date

D. Number of pages and chapters

Answer: B. Number of logical records and programming language

Explanation: Parentheses are used to enclose the number of logical records after the designation for a data file and the programming language for a program file.

29. How is the plus sign (+) used in cataloguing?

A. To indicate a new section

B. To precede a statement of accompanying material

C. To denote an addition to the title

D. To mark editorial comments

Answer: B. To precede a statement of accompanying material

Explanation: The plus sign (+) precedes a statement of accompanying material.

30. What does the plus sign (+) indicate when giving the declination of the center of a celestial chart?

A. The Southern Hemisphere

B. The Western Hemisphere

C. The Northern Hemisphere

D. The Eastern Hemisphere

Answer: C. The Northern Hemisphere

Explanation: The plus sign (+) is used to indicate the Northern Hemisphere when giving the declination of the center of a celestial chart.

31. How are square brackets [ ] used in cataloguing?

A. To mark the start of a new section

B. To denote editorial comments

C. To enclose information taken from outside the prescribed source or sources

D. To indicate accompanying materials

Answer: C. To enclose information taken from outside the prescribed source or sources

Explanation: Square brackets [ ] are used to enclose information taken from outside the prescribed source or sources.

32. What do square brackets [ ] enclose in cataloguing?

A. Editorial comments

B. General material designation

C. Physical details of accompanying material

D. Title and author information

Answer: B. General material designation

Explanation: Square brackets [ ] are used to enclose the general material designation.

33. What comprises the main structure of the bibliographic entry according to AACR 2R?

A. Title, author, and publisher

B. Heading, description, and subject description

C. Introduction, body, and conclusion

D. Title, publication date, and page numbers

Answer: B. Heading, description, and subject description

Explanation: The main structure of the bibliographic entry comprises the heading, the description, and the subject description.

34. What is the purpose of the first level (1.OD1) in bibliographic description according to AACR 2R?

A. For major-item entries in catalogues

B. For entries with detailed descriptions

C. For minor-item entries and catalogues with a policy of minimum description

D. For entries with supplementary materials

Answer: C. For minor-item entries and catalogues with a policy of minimum description

Explanation: The first level (1.OD1) was designed for minor-item entries and for catalogues with a policy of minimum description.

35. How should the physical description of maps and globes be given according to Rule 3.5D5?

A. Using only the dimensions

B. Including color, material, and stand information

C. Listing the author and title

D. Mentioning the publication date

Answer: B. Including color, material, and stand information

Explanation: Rule 3.5D5 specifies the physical description of maps and globes to include details such as color, material, and stand information.

36. What type of media does AACR 2, Chapter 7 cover?

A. Printed books

B. Music recordings

C. Motion pictures and video recordings

D. Manuscripts

Answer: C. Motion pictures and video recordings

Explanation: AACR 2, Chapter 7 prescribes rules for the descriptive cataloguing of all types of media involving a sequence of images projected in rapid succession, including motion pictures and video recordings.

37. According to Rule 5.0a, what does Chapter 5 of AACR 2 cover?

A. Description of unpublished manuscripts

B. Cataloguing of video recordings

C. Description of published music

D. Description of graphic materials

Answer: C. Description of published music

Explanation: Rule 5.0a specifies that Chapter 5 of AACR 2 covers the description of published music.

38. What is the chief source of information for computer files according to AACR 2?

A. The disc label

B. The title screen

C. The container

D. The manual

Answer: B. The title screen

Explanation: The chief source of information for computer files is the title screen or other formally presented internal evidence if there is no title screen.

39. What does Rule 8.0A cover in AACR 2?

A. Description of music

B. Description of graphic materials

C. Cataloguing of sound recordings

D. Description of manuscripts

Answer: B. Description of graphic materials

Explanation: Rule 8.0A covers the description of graphic materials of all kinds, whether opaque or intended to be projected or viewed.

40. According to Rule 8.0B1, what is considered the chief source of information for graphic materials?

A. The title page

B. The container

C. The item itself, including any labels

D. The accompanying textual material

Answer: C. The item itself, including any labels

Explanation: Rule 8.0B1 specifies that the chief source of information for graphic materials is the item itself, including any labels or the container if it is an integral part of the item.

41. What types of objects are covered under Rule 10.0A1 in AACR 2?

A. Only books and manuscripts

B. Only graphic materials

C. Three-dimensional objects and artifacts

D. Only sound recordings

Answer: C. Three-dimensional objects and artifacts

Explanation: Rule 10.0A1 covers the description of three-dimensional objects of all kinds, including models, dioramas, games, sculptures, exhibits, and natural/occurring objects.

42. According to Rule 10.0B1, what is the chief source of information for three-dimensional artifacts and realia?

A. The manual

B. The accompanying textual material

C. The object itself

D. The publisher's website

Answer: C. The object itself

Explanation: Rule 10.0B1 specifies that the chief source of information for three-dimensional artifacts and realia is the object itself, together with any accompanying textual material and container issued by the publisher or manufacturer.

43. What major types of changes were made to Chapter 3 (Cartographic Materials) in the 2002 revision of AACR 2R?

A. Changes related to digital graphic representation

B. Removal of all outdated rules

C. Introduction of new physical details

D. Elimination of mathematical data area

Answer: A. Changes related to digital graphic representation

Explanation: The 2002 revision of AACR 2R included major changes to Chapter 3 involving additional rules for the description of cartographic materials in electronic form, including rules for type and extent of resources, digital graphic representation, and numbering related to serials.

44. What was the goal of the changes made to Rule 3.3D (Statement of coordinates and equinox)?

A. To remove coordinate recording

B. To allow recording coordinates in decimal degrees

C. To simplify the rule

D. To eliminate the use of coordinates

Answer: B. To allow recording coordinates in decimal degrees

Explanation: Rule 3.3D was changed to allow the recording of coordinates in decimal degrees as well as in degrees, minutes, and seconds.

45. How was the scope of Chapter 12 changed in the 2002 revision?

A. It was restricted to serials only

B. It was expanded to include more types of continuing resources

C. It excluded reprints of serials

D. It was renamed to "Serials"

Answer: B. It was expanded to include more types of continuing resources

Explanation: The scope of Chapter 12 was expanded to include successively issued resources, ongoing integrating resources, and some categories of finite resources with the character of serials but whose duration is limited.

46. What is the new general material designation for cartographic materials in list 2 of rule 1.1C1?

A. Map

B. Globe

C. Cartographic material

D. Atlas

Answer: C. Cartographic material

Explanation: The general material designations “globe” and “map” were replaced with the single designation “cartographic material.”

47. What is the new name of Chapter 9 in AACR 2R?

A. Computer Files

B. Digital Resources

C. Electronic Resources

D. Online Resources

Answer: C. Electronic Resources

Explanation: Chapter 9 was renamed “Electronic Resources” to reflect the changes and updates made

to align with ISBD(ER) and to accommodate the nature of electronic resources.

48. According to the 2002 revision, what should cataloguers always include when describing remote access electronic resources?

A. The file size

B. The date viewed

C. The author

D. The download speed

Answer: B. The date viewed

Explanation: Rule 9.7B22 instructs cataloguers to always include the date viewed when describing remote access electronic resources.

49. What general material designation was updated in list 1 and list 2 of rule 1.1C1?

A. Video recording

B. Computer file

C. Audiobook

D. Electronic resource

Answer: D. Electronic resource

Explanation: The general material designation was updated from "computer file" to "electronic resource."

50. What were some of the editorial changes made to Chapter 3 in the 2002 revision of AACR 2R?

A. Removal of all map sections

B. Introduction of new physical details

C. Updating terminology and reflecting changes from other chapters

D. Simplifying the rules

Answer: C. Updating terminology and reflecting changes from other chapters

Explanation: Editorial changes were made to match new terminology and to reflect changes made in other chapters.

51. What changes were made to Chapter 25 regarding uniform titles for music in AACR 2R?

A. Added new rules for music composition

B. Moved the definition of "musical work" to a footnote in rule 25.25A

C. Removed all rules for uniform titles

D. Introduced new terminology for musical genres

Answer: B. Moved the definition of "musical work" to a footnote in rule 25.25A

Explanation: The definition of "musical work" was moved from the glossary to a footnote in rule 25.25A to clarify its use in the rules for music uniform titles.

52. What does RDA stand for?

A. Resource Data Access

B. Resources Description and Access

C. Resource Development and Archiving

D. Resource Documentation and Authentication

Answer: B. Resources Description and Access

Explanation: RDA stands for "Resources Description and Access," which is the new standard that will succeed AACR2R.

53. What are the two parts of RDA?

A. Description and Metadata

B. Data and Records

C. Part A (Description and Access Elements) and Part B (Authority Control)

D. Parts I and II

Answer: C. Part A (Description and Access Elements) and Part B (Authority Control)

Explanation: RDA is divided into two parts: Part A covers description and access elements, while Part B covers authority control for the form of access points.

54. What are some objectives and principles for the design of RDA?

A. Inconsistency and Complexity

B. Compatibility and Adaptability

C. Redundancy and Ambiguity

D. Simplicity and Generalization

Answer: B. Compatibility and Adaptability

Explanation: Objectives and principles for the design of RDA include comprehensiveness, consistency, clarity, rationality, currency, compatibility, adaptability, ease and efficiency of use, format, generalization, specificity, non-redundancy, and terminology.

55. What does FRBR stand for?

A. Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records

B. Formal Records and Bibliographic References

C. Functional Records and Bibliographic Requirements

D. Formatted Resources and Bibliographic Records

Answer: A. Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records

Explanation: FRBR stands for Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records, a conceptual model developed by an IFLA Study Group.

56. What is the relationship between FRBR and RDA?

A. FRBR replaces RDA

B. FRBR is used as the conceptual foundation for RDA

C. FRBR is unrelated to RDA

D. FRBR simplifies RDA terminology

Answer: B. FRBR is used as the conceptual foundation for RDA

Explanation: FRBR provides the conceptual foundation for RDA, including its terminology, attributes, relationships, and user tasks.

57. What user tasks are identified by FRBR that bibliographic records are intended to fulfill?

A. Create, edit, delete, archive

B. Find, identify, select, obtain

C. Write, read, store, retrieve

D. Search, view, download, print

Answer: B. Find, identify, select, obtain

Explanation: FRBR identifies specific user tasks for bibliographic records, which include finding, identifying, selecting, and obtaining resources.

58. How will RDA utilize FRAD in its instructions?

A. For authority control

B. For digital resource management

C. For cataloging physical items

D. For user interface design

Answer: A. For authority control

Explanation: RDA will use FRAD (Functional Requirements for Authority Data) as the basis for instructions on authority control.

59. How is the RDA structure outlined in terms of recording attributes and relationships?

A. Recording attributes are covered in Sections 5-10, and relationships in Sections 1-4

B. Recording attributes are covered in Sections 1-4, and relationships in Sections 5-10

C. Recording attributes and relationships are both covered in Sections 1-6

D. Recording attributes and relationships are both covered in Sections 7-10

Answer: B. Recording attributes are covered in Sections 1-4, and relationships in Sections 5-10

Explanation: The RDA structure outlines recording attributes in Sections 1-4 and recording relationships in Sections 5-10.

60. Does RDA include instructions on how to create or format subject headings?

A. Yes, RDA includes detailed instructions on subject headings.

B. No, RDA does not include instructions on creating or formatting subject headings but refers to them in relation to Group 1 FRBR entities.

C. Yes, RDA provides a separate section dedicated to subject headings.

D. No, RDA excludes subject headings altogether.

Answer: B. No, RDA does not include instructions on creating or formatting subject headings but refers to them in relation to Group 1 FRBR entities.

Explanation: RDA does not provide specific instructions on subject headings but refers to their relationship with Group 1 FRBR entities.

61. What is an "access point" in bibliographic records?

A. A term for the physical location of a library book

B. A name, term, etc., under which a bibliographic record may be searched and identified

C. A code used to categorize different types of library materials

D. A system for tracking overdue books

Answer: B. A name, term, etc., under which a bibliographic record may be searched and identified

Explanation: An "access point" is a name, term, or other identifier used to search and identify a bibliographic record.

62. What is defined as "accompanying materials"?

A. Materials used for digital storage

B. Material issued with and intended to be used with the item being catalogued

C. Any additional resources found in a library

D. The physical location of the item in the library

Answer: B. Material issued with and intended to be used with the item being catalogued

Explanation: "Accompanying materials" are those issued with and intended to be used with the catalogued item.

63. How is an "artifact" defined?

A. A digital file created by a computer program

B. Any object made or modified by one or more persons

C. A type of audio recording

D. A two-dimensional representation of a historical event

Answer: B. Any object made or modified by one or more persons

Explanation: An "artifact" is any object made or modified by one or more persons.

64. What does the term "art original" refer to?

A. A digital reproduction of an artwork

B. An original two- or three-dimensional work of art created by the artist

C. A copy of an artwork produced in a museum

D. A scanned image of a painting

Answer: B. An original two- or three-dimensional work of art created by the artist

Explanation: An "art original" refers to an original two- or three-dimensional artwork created by the artist.

65. What is described by the term "audio tape"?

A. A digital recording stored on a CD

B. A sound recording on magnetic tape

C. A type of video recording

D. A digital image file

Answer: B. A sound recording on magnetic tape

Explanation: "Audio tape" refers to a sound recording on magnetic tape.

66. What is a "computer file"?

A. A printed document containing computer code

B. A file (data and/or programs) encoded for manipulation by a computer

C. A physical disk used to store computer data

D. A type of digital artwork

Answer: B. A file (data and/or programs) encoded for manipulation by a computer

Explanation: A "computer file" is data and/or programs encoded for manipulation by a computer.

67. How is "digital" defined?

A. Refers to the use of continuous signals for representing data

B. Refers to the use of discrete signals for representing data in the form of numbers or characters

C. Refers to physical documents stored on paper

D. Refers to analog recording methods

Answer: B. Refers to the use of discrete signals for representing data in the form of numbers or characters

Explanation: "Digital" refers to the use of discrete signals for representing data in the form of numbers or characters.

68. What does "film strip" refer to?

A. A digital video file

B. A length of film containing a succession of images intended for projection one at a time

C. A type of computer software

D. A physical book with sequential images

Answer: B. A length of film containing a succession of images intended for projection one at a time

Explanation: A "film strip" is a length of film containing sequential images intended for projection.

69. What is the definition of "microform"?

A. A digital file format

B. A medium, transparent or opaque, bearing micro-images

C. A type of physical book

D. A digital representation of a historical document

Answer: B. A medium, transparent or opaque, bearing micro-images

Explanation: "Microform" refers to a medium bearing micro-image, which can be transparent or opaque.

70. What does "realia" refer to?

A. Digital replicas of historical artifacts

B. An artifact or a naturally occurring entity, as opposed to a replica

C. A type of fictional artwork

D. A digital document containing historical information

Answer: B. An artifact or a naturally occurring entity, as opposed to a replica

Explanation: "Realia" refers to an artifact or naturally occurring entity, not a replica.

71. What is a "score" in musical terms?

A. A list of music reviews

B. A series of staves on which all the different instrumental and/or vocal parts of a musical work are written

C. A digital file containing musical notes

D. A summary of a musical performance

Answer: B. A series of staves on which all the different instrumental and/or vocal parts of a musical work are written

Explanation: A "score" is a series of staves where all the parts of a musical work are written.

72. What does "sound recording" refer to?

A. A physical book describing sound technologies

B. A recording on which sound vibrations have been registered by mechanical or electrical means

C. A digital image file of sound waves

D. A printed document about sound recording techniques

Answer: B. A recording on which sound vibrations have been registered by mechanical or electrical means

Explanation: "Sound recording" refers to a recording where sound vibrations are registered by mechanical or electrical means.

73. What is a "title frame"?

A. A digital frame used for displaying titles in videos

B. A frame containing printed or written material not part of the subject content of the item

C. A physical book cover

D. A frame for displaying artworks

Answer: B. A frame containing printed or written material not part of the subject content of the item

Explanation: A "title frame" is a frame containing printed or written material that is not part of the main subject content of the item.

74. What is a "video recording"?

A. A recording on which visual images, usually in motion and accompanied by sound, have been registered and is designed for playback by means of a television set

B. A digital file containing video data

C. A type of printed material with images

D. A physical tape used for storing video files

Answer: A. A recording on which visual images, usually in motion and accompanied by sound, have been registered and is designed for playback by means of a television set

Explanation: A "video recording" is a recording of visual images and sound designed for playback on a television set.

1. Who first gave a generalised set of rules for subject indexing in his Rules for a Dictionary Catalogue (RDC) published in 1876?

A. Melvil Dewey
B. Charles Ammi Cutter
C. S.R. Ranganathan
D. Paul Otlet

Answer: B. Charles Ammi Cutter

Explanation: Charles Ammi Cutter was the first to provide a generalised set of rules for subject indexing in his Rules for a Dictionary Catalogue (RDC) published in 1876.

2. What term did Charles Ammi Cutter use instead of 'indexing'?

A. Filing
B. Cataloguing
C. Sorting
D. Referencing

Answer: B. Cataloguing

Explanation: Charles Ammi Cutter used the term 'cataloguing' instead of 'indexing'.

3. What does the phrase 'subject indexing' include according to this course material?

A. Subject cataloguing only
B. Subject referencing
C. Subject cataloguing and indexing
D. Subject filing

Answer: C. Subject cataloguing and indexing

Explanation: The phrase 'subject indexing' includes both subject cataloguing and indexing according to this course material.

4. What is subject cataloguing intended to embrace?

A. Cataloguing activity providing a verbal subject approach to micro documents
B. Indexing activity for books
C. Cataloguing activity providing a verbal subject approach to library collections, especially macro documents
D. Filing activity for journals

Answer: C. Cataloguing activity providing a verbal subject approach to library collections, especially macro documents

Explanation: Subject cataloguing is intended to embrace cataloguing activity that provides a verbal subject approach to library collections, especially macro documents like books.

5. What is the primary purpose of the subject catalogue?

A. To categorize books by their publication date
B. To show which books on a specific subject are possessed by the library
C. To list all books alphabetically
D. To index journal articles

Answer: B. To show which books on a specific subject are possessed by the library

Explanation: The primary purpose of the subject catalogue is to show which books on a specific subject are possessed by the library.

6. What does subject indexing refer to?

A. Cataloguing books
B. Indexing activity providing a verbal subject approach to micro documents
C. Filing patents
D. Sorting research reports

Answer: B. Indexing activity providing a verbal subject approach to micro documents

Explanation: Subject indexing refers to indexing activity that provides a verbal subject approach to micro documents such as journal articles, research reports, and patent literature.

7. Where does the specific usage of the term 'index' originate?

A. Ancient Greece
B. Ancient Rome

C. Medieval Europe
D. Renaissance Italy

Answer: B. Ancient Rome

Explanation: The specific usage of the term 'index' goes back to ancient Rome, where it was used in relation to literary works.

8. What was the term 'index' used for in ancient Rome?

A. To label the spine of books
B. For the little slip attached to papyrus scrolls with the title and sometimes the author's name
C. As a bookmark
D. As a table of contents

Answer: B. For the little slip attached to papyrus scrolls with the title and sometimes the author's name

Explanation: In ancient Rome, the term 'index' was used for the little slip attached to papyrus scrolls with the title of the work and sometimes the author's name.

9. What is regarded as the father of all indexing techniques?

A. Digital indexing
B. Card catalogues
C. Preparation of back-of-the-book index
D. Microform indexing

Answer: C. Preparation of back-of-the-book index

Explanation: Preparation of back-of-the-book index is historically regarded as the father of all indexing techniques.

10. What are the two types of back-of-the-book indexes?

A. Alphabetical and Numerical
B. Specific and Relative
C. General and Specific
D. Detailed and Summary

Answer: B. Specific and Relative

Explanation: The two types of back-of-the-book indexes are Specific index and Relative index.

11. What does a specific index show?

A. Various aspects of an idea
B. Broad topic in the form of one-idea-one-entry
C. The relationship between different ideas
D. Detailed historical context

Answer: B. Broad topic in the form of one-idea-one-entry

Explanation: A specific index shows a broad topic in the form of one-idea-one-entry, focusing on the specific context of a specific idea.

12. What is the purpose of a relative index?

A. To show broad topics only
B. To show various aspects of an idea and its relationship with other ideas
C. To list items alphabetically
D. To catalog micro documents

Answer: B. To show various aspects of an idea and its relationship with other ideas

Explanation: A relative index shows various aspects of an idea and its relationship with other ideas, unlike a specific index which shows broad topics in a one-idea-one-entry format.

13. Who was both a classificationist and a theoretician of the library catalogue?

A. Melvil Dewey
B. S.R. Ranganathan
C. Charles Ammi Cutter
D. Paul Otlet

Answer: C. Charles Ammi Cutter

Explanation: Charles Ammi Cutter was both a classificationist and a theoretician of the library catalogue.

14. What did Charles Ammi Cutter observe about the subject assigned to a document?

A. It indicated the specific subject of the document
B. It did not indicate the subject of the document
C. It indicated the class to which the subject of the document belonged
D. It was often incorrect

Answer: C. It indicated the class to which the subject of the document belonged

Explanation: Charles Ammi Cutter observed that the subject assigned to a document did not indicate its specific subject but rather the class to which the subject of the document belonged.

15. Provide an example given by Cutter to illustrate his observation on subject assignment.

A. Assigning 'plant' to a document discussing agriculture
B. Assigning 'tree' to a document discussing forestry
C. Assigning 'plant' to a document discussing the plant 'cactus'
D. Assigning 'animal' to a document discussing zoology

Answer: C. Assigning 'plant' to a document discussing the plant 'cactus'

Explanation: An example given by Cutter is assigning the subject 'plant' to a document discussing the plant 'cactus', illustrating that the assigned subject indicated the broader class rather than the specific subject.

16. Why is the year 1876 particularly important for the library profession?

A. Introduction of the Dewey Decimal System
B. Publication of two outstanding books by Melvil Dewey and Charles Ammi Cutter
C. Founding of the American Library Association
D. Introduction of the Library of Congress Classification

Answer: B. Publication of two outstanding books by Melvil Dewey and Charles Ammi Cutter

Explanation: The year 1876 is significant for the publication of "A Classification and Subject Index for Cataloguing and Arranging the Books and Pamphlets of a Library" by Melvil Dewey and "Rules for a Dictionary Catalogue" by Charles Ammi Cutter.

17. What did the demand for a 'standard list of subject headings' lead to?

A. Creation of the Dewey Decimal System
B. Publication of a list of subject headings by the American Library Association (ALA)
C. Development of a new cataloguing system
D. Introduction of electronic cataloguing

Answer: B. Publication of a list of subject headings by the American Library Association (ALA)

Explanation: The demand for a 'standard list of subject headings' led to the publication of a list of subject headings by the American Library Association (ALA) to be used in a dictionary catalogue.

18. Which subject heading lists were influenced by the ALA's list of subject headings?

A. Dewey Decimal Classification and Universal Decimal Classification
B. Library of Congress Subject Headings and Sears List of Subject Headings
C. National Library of Medicine Subject Headings and Engineering Index
D. Index Medicus and Science Citation Index

Answer: B. Library of Congress Subject Headings and Sears List of Subject Headings

Explanation: The ALA's list of subject headings established a pattern for subsequent subject heading lists, including the Library of Congress Subject Headings and Sears List of Subject Headings.

19. Who first gave the idea of categorising terms under two fundamental categories: concretes and processes?

A. Charles Ammi Cutter
B. Melvil Dewey

C. J. Kaiser
D. S.R. Ranganathan

Answer: C. J. Kaiser

Explanation: J. Kaiser, in his Systematic Indexing (1911), was the first person to give the idea of categorising terms under two fundamental categories: concretes and processes.

20. What is the basic contention of Ranganathan's chain procedure?

A. Use of alphabetical order for subject headings
B. Fitting a multidimensional universe of subjects into a rigid one-dimensional model
C. Requiring a chain of terms to name a subject where the term indicating the specific subject is stated in a particular context
D. Categorizing terms under concretes and processes

Answer: C. Requiring a chain of terms to name a subject where the term indicating the specific subject is stated in a particular context

Explanation: The basic contention of Ranganathan's chain procedure is that a multidimensional universe of subjects cannot be fitted into a rigid one-dimensional model, and hence, a chain of terms is required to name a subject where the term indicating the specific subject is stated in a particular context.

21. Who devised a scheme of pre-coordinate indexing system known as Relational Indexing?

A. Charles Ammi Cutter
B. J. Kaiser
C. J. E. L. Farradane
D. S.R. Ranganathan

Answer: C. J. E. L. Farradane

Explanation: J. E. L. Farradane devised a scheme of pre-coordinate indexing system known as Relational Indexing.

22. What was one of Farradane's contributions to the area of subject indexing?

A. Development of the Dewey Decimal System
B. Analysis of relationship among each pair of terms
C. Categorizing terms under concretes and processes
D. Introduction of electronic cataloguing

Answer: B. Analysis of relationship among each pair of terms

Explanation: Farradane's contributions to subject indexing included the analysis of relationship among each pair of terms, use of relational operators, and representation of relationships among terms by relational operators leading to the creation of 'Analets'.

23. What does the term 'Analet' refer to in Farradane's Relational Indexing?

A. A type of library catalog
B. A pair of terms linked by any of the relational operators
C. A digital indexing system
D. A classification scheme

Answer: B. A pair of terms linked by any of the relational operators

Explanation: In Farradane's Relational Indexing, an 'Analet' refers to a pair of terms linked by any of the relational operators.

24. What was E. J. Coates' contribution to subject indexing?

A. Developing the Dewey Decimal System
B. Synthesizing ideas of Cutter, Kaiser, Ranganathan, and Farradane
C. Creating the Library of Congress Subject Headings
D. Introducing electronic cataloguing

Answer: B. Synthesizing ideas of Cutter, Kaiser, Ranganathan, and Farradane

Explanation: E. J. Coates' contribution to subject indexing was synthesizing the ideas of Cutter, Kaiser, Ranganathan, and Farradane.

25. Where did E. J. Coates apply his synthesized ideas on subject indexing?

A. Library of Congress
B. Dewey Decimal Classification
C. British Technology Index (now Current Technology Index)
D. Universal Decimal Classification

Answer: C. British Technology Index (now Current Technology Index)

Explanation: E. J. Coates applied his synthesized ideas on subject indexing to the British Technology Index (now Current Technology Index), where he was the editor from its inception in 1963 until his retirement in 1976.

26. Who developed the Preserved Context Index System (PRECIS) and when was it applied to BNB?

A. Derek Austin in 1971
B. H. P. Luhn in 1952
C. J. E. L. Farradane in 1963
D. E. J. Coates in 1976

Answer: A. Derek Austin in 1971

Explanation: Derek Austin developed the Preserved Context Index System (PRECIS), which was applied to the British National Bibliography (BNB) in 1971.

27. What problem did PRECIS seek to rectify?

A. Inconsistency in cataloguing standards
B. Co-extensiveness in deriving subject index entries
C. Lack of digital cataloguing systems
D. Complexity in classification schemes

Answer: B. Co-extensiveness in deriving subject index entries

Explanation: PRECIS sought to rectify the problem of co-extensiveness by generating entries with a lead term and the full context of the document.

28. How did PRECIS generate index entries?

A. Manually by human indexers
B. Mechanically by computer from input strings
C. Using relational operators and Analets
D. By categorizing terms under concretes and processes

Answer: B. Mechanically by computer from input strings

Explanation: PRECIS depended heavily on computers to generate mechanically all index entries from input strings.

29. What theoretical foundation did Neelameghan, Devadasan, Gopinath, and others give to POPSI?

A. Relational Indexing Theory
B. General Theory of Subject Indexing Languages (GT-SIL)
C. Chain Procedure Theory
D. Preserved Context Index System (PRECIS)

Answer: B. General Theory of Subject Indexing Languages (GT-SIL)

Explanation: Neelameghan, Devadasan, Gopinath, and others provided a sound theoretical foundation to POPSI in terms of the General Theory of Subject Indexing Languages (GT-SIL).

30. What does GT-SIL seek to analyze in Subject Indexing Languages?

A. Usage of relational operators and Analets
B. Compatibility with existing records
C. Deep structure in terms of semantic, elementary, and syntactic structure
D. Computer-generated indexing processes

Answer: C. Deep structure in terms of semantic, elementary, and syntactic structure

Explanation: GT-SIL seeks to analyze the deep structure of Subject Indexing Languages in terms of semantic structure, elementary structure, and syntactic structure of subject propositions.

31. What is the essence of GT-SIL?

A. Logical abstraction of the structures of outstanding subject indexing languages
B. Mechanically generating index entries from input strings
C. Using digital signals for representing data
D. Developing printed indexes for the British National Bibliography

Answer: A. Logical abstraction of the structures of outstanding subject indexing languages

Explanation: The essence of GT-SIL is a logical abstraction of the structures of outstanding subject indexing languages such as those of Cutter, Dewey, Kaiser, and Ranganathan.

32. What indexing systems were developed during the 1960s?

A. Dewey Decimal Classification and Universal Decimal Classification
B. Uniterm, Optical Coincidence Card, Edge-Notched Card
C. Library of Congress Classification and Sears List of Subject Headings
D. Keyword-In-Context (KWIC) and Preserved Context Index System (PRECIS)

Answer: B. Uniterm, Optical Coincidence Card, Edge-Notched Card

Explanation: The 1960s saw the development of post-coordinate indexing systems like Uniterm, Optical Coincidence Card (Peek-a-boo), and Edge-Notched Card.

33. Which organization is said to be the first to use machine-produced keywords from Title Index?

A. American Library Association
B. Library of Congress
C. Central Intelligence Agency (CIA) of USA
D. British National Bibliography (BNB)

Answer: C. Central Intelligence Agency (CIA) of USA

Explanation: The Central Intelligence Agency (CIA) of the USA is said to be the first organization to use machine-produced keywords from the Title Index since 1952.

34. Who produced and distributed copies of machine-produced permuted title indexes at the International Conference of Scientific Information in 1958?

A. Derek Austin
B. H. P. Luhn
C. J. E. L. Farradane
D. E. J. Coates

Answer: B. H. P. Luhn

Explanation: H. P. Luhn and his associates produced and distributed copies of machine-produced permuted title indexes at the International Conference of Scientific Information held in Washington in 1958.

35. What is the name given to the index method reported by H. P. Luhn?

A. Preserved Context Index System (PRECIS)
B. Relational Indexing
C. Keyword-In-Context (KWIC)
D. General Theory of Subject Indexing Languages (GT-SIL)

Answer: C. Keyword-In-Context (KWIC)

Explanation: H. P. Luhn named the index method as Keyword-In-Context (KWIC) index and reported the method of generation of KWIC index in a paper.

36. Which organization established the value of KWIC after its adoption in 1961?

A. American Library Association
B. Library of Congress
C. American Chemical Society
D. British National Bibliography (BNB)

Answer: C. American Chemical Society

Explanation: The American Chemical Society established the value of KWIC after its adoption in 1961 for its publication 'Chemical Titles'.

37. Who published the Science Citation Index (SCI) and when?

A. H. P. Luhn in 1961
B. Eugene Garfield of the Institute of Scientific Information (ISI) in 1963
C. J. E. L. Farradane in 1963
D. E. J. Coates in 1963

Answer: B. Eugene Garfield of the Institute of Scientific Information (ISI) in 1963

Explanation: The Science Citation Index (SCI) was published by Eugene Garfield of the Institute of Scientific Information (ISI), Philadelphia in 1963, providing a new approach to bibliographic file organization.

38. When was the online version of the Science Citation Index, known as SCISEARCH, published?

A. 1963
B. 1973
C. 1974
D. 1978

Answer: C. 1974

Explanation: The online version of the Science Citation Index, known as SCISEARCH, was published in 1974.

39. What other citation indexes did ISI publish and when?

A. Social Science Citation Index (SSCI) in 1973 and Arts and Humanities Citation Index (A&HCI) in 1978
B. Social Science Citation Index (SSCI) in 1963 and Arts and Humanities Citation Index (A&HCI) in 1973
C. Social Science Citation Index (SSCI) in 1974 and Arts and Humanities Citation Index (A&HCI) in 1978
D. Social Science Citation Index (SSCI) in 1978 and Arts and Humanities Citation Index (A&HCI) in 1973

Answer: A. Social Science Citation Index (SSCI) in 1973 and Arts and Humanities Citation Index (A&HCI) in 1978

Explanation: ISI published the Social Science Citation Index (SSCI) in 1973 and the Arts and Humanities Citation Index (A&HCI) in 1978.

40. When did ISI publish the first issue of Current Contents featuring citation classics?

A. 1963
B. 1973
C. 1974
D. 1977

Answer: D. 1977

Explanation: The publication of citation classics in the first issue of Current Contents by ISI occurred in 1977.

41. From which Latin word does the term "index" originate, and what does it mean?

A. Indicatus, meaning 'to record'
B. Indicare, meaning 'to point out, to guide, to direct, to locate'
C. Indexus, meaning 'to list'
D. Indicatum, meaning 'to document'

Answer: B. Indicare, meaning 'to point out, to guide, to direct, to locate'

Explanation: The term "index" comes from the Latin word "indicare," which means 'to point out, to guide, to direct, to locate.'

42. How does the British Standards (BS 3700: 1964) define an index?

A. A collection of related documents
B. A methodically arranged list of items
C. A systematic guide to the text of any reading matter or to the contents of other collected

documentary material
D. A directory of bibliographic records

Answer: C. A systematic guide to the text of any reading matter or to the contents of other collected documentary material

Explanation: According to the British Standards (BS 3700: 1964), an index is "a systematic guide to the text of any reading matter or to the contents of other collected documentary material, comprising a series of entries, with headings arranged in alphabetical or other chosen order and with references to show where each item indexed is located."

43. What is the primary function of an index?

A. To organize books by genre
B. To prepare bibliographic records
C. To give subject access to documents irrespective of their physical forms
D. To catalogue periodicals

Answer: C. To give subject access to documents irrespective of their physical forms

Explanation: An index is designed to give subject access to documents irrespective of their physical forms like books, periodical articles, newspapers, audiovisual documents, and computer-readable records including web resources.

44. What are the basic objectives of a catalogue as stated by Charles Ammi Cutter in chapter 1 of his Rules for a Dictionary Catalog?

A. To classify books and provide a summary
B. To enable a person to find a book of which the subject is known, and to show what the library has on a given subject (and related subjects)
C. To provide digital access to books
D. To catalog periodicals

Answer: B. To enable a person to find a book of which the subject is known, and to show what the library has on a given subject (and related subjects)

Explanation: Charles Ammi Cutter's basic objectives of a catalogue are to enable a person to find a book of which the subject is known and to show what the library has on a given subject and related subjects.

45. What is the primary difference between 'subject cataloguing' and 'subject indexing'?

A. Subject cataloguing is for digital resources, while subject indexing is for printed materials
B. Subject cataloguing provides overall subject labels for whole documents, while subject indexing delves into deeper content analysis of document parts
C. Subject cataloguing is a modern practice, while subject indexing is historical
D. Subject cataloguing is done only for books, while subject indexing is done for periodicals

Answer: B. Subject cataloguing provides overall subject labels for whole documents, while subject indexing delves into deeper content analysis of document parts

Explanation: Subject cataloguing provides overall subject labels for whole documents like books, while subject indexing involves analyzing document content at a deeper level to provide access to many concepts within the document.

46. How are the contents of a book revealed in subject indexing compared to subject cataloguing?

A. Through a detailed bibliography
B. Via a back-of-the-book index containing hundreds of subject terms
C. By using a digital catalog
D. Through a summary in the catalog

Answer: B. Via a back-of-the-book index containing hundreds of subject terms

Explanation: While subject cataloguing might list a book under one or two subject headings, the detailed contents are revealed through a back-of-the-book index containing hundreds of subject terms.

47. How does subject indexing usually refer to the representation of subject matter?

A. Only for books
B. For both overall documents and their parts
C. For digital media exclusively
D. For catalog entries only

Answer: B. For both overall documents and their parts

Explanation: Subject indexing may refer to the representation of the subject matter of both overall documents and their parts, such as chapters in books or papers within periodicals.

48. What term is used to describe the process of assigning class numbers to documents for arranging them on shelves or in catalogues?

A. Subject cataloguing
B. Indexing
C. Classification
D. Analytical cataloguing

Answer: C. Classification

Explanation: The term classification refers to the process of assigning class numbers to documents for the purpose of arranging them on shelves or in catalogues.

49. How can a subject catalogue of a library be arranged?

A. Only alphabetically
B. Only according to a classification scheme
C. Either alphabetically or according to a classification scheme
D. By publication date

Answer: C. Either alphabetically or according to a classification scheme

Explanation: A subject catalogue of a library can be arranged either alphabetically (in an alphabetical subject catalogue or dictionary catalogue) or according to the sequence of a classification scheme (in a classified catalogue).

50. What does subject indexing conceptually involve?

A. Digital cataloguing
B. Detailed physical description of documents
C. Classification and forming classes of objects based on subject matter
D. Summary writing

Answer: C. Classification and forming classes of objects based on subject matter

Explanation: Subject indexing conceptually involves classification, forming classes of objects based on their subject matter, and representing them either verbally or in notation.

51. How is the term 'subject indexing' used in this context for convenience?

A. To refer to digital cataloguing only
B. To describe all activities of subject cataloguing
C. To refer to audio-visual cataloguing
D. To describe manual cataloguing practices

Answer: B. To describe all activities of subject cataloguing

Explanation: The term 'subject indexing' is used in this context for convenience to describe all activities of subject cataloguing.

52. What are the two intellectual steps in the indexing process?

A. Identification and classification
B. Translation and conceptual analysis
C. Retrieval and cataloguing
D. Analysis and review

Answer: B. Translation and conceptual analysis

Explanation: The indexing process consists of two intellectual steps: conceptual analysis, which involves identifying different component ideas and their interrelationships, and translation, which involves expressing these concepts in the indexing language.

53. What does the conceptual analysis step in indexing involve?

A. Translating the document
B. Identifying different component ideas and their interrelationships
C. Cataloguing the document
D. Reviewing the syntax

Answer: B. Identifying different component ideas and their interrelationships

Explanation: Conceptual analysis involves identifying different component ideas associated with the thought content of the document and establishing their interrelationships.

54. What is the purpose of the translation step in indexing?

A. To translate the document into another language
B. To express principal concepts into the indexing language
C. To summarize the document
D. To review the content of the document

Answer: B. To express principal concepts into the indexing language

Explanation: The translation step involves expressing the principal concepts identified during the conceptual analysis into the language of the indexing system.

55. What are the components of an indexing language according to Ranganathan?

A. Controlled vocabulary, syntax, and semantics
B. Syntax, semantics, and translation
C. Vocabulary, grammar, and retrieval
D. Concepts, ideas, and translation

Answer: A. Controlled vocabulary, syntax, and semantics

Explanation: According to Ranganathan, an indexing language consists of three basic elements: controlled vocabulary, syntax, and semantics.

56. What is the role of controlled vocabulary in an indexing language?

A. To translate documents
B. To establish relationships between terms and provide subject indexes
C. To summarize documents
D. To classify documents

Answer: B. To establish relationships between terms and provide subject indexes

Explanation: Controlled vocabulary is a limited set of terms showing their relationships and indicating ways to combine them to provide subject indexes to documents and search for these documents in a particular system.

57. What does syntax refer to in the context of an indexing language?

A. The meaning of terms
B. The sequence of occurrence of terms/words in representing content
C. The translation process
D. The retrieval process

Answer: B. The sequence of occurrence of terms/words in representing content

Explanation: Syntax comprises a grammatical structure or set of rules that govern the sequence of occurrence of terms/words in representing the content of the document.

58. How is semantics defined in the context of an indexing language?

A. The grammatical structure of the language
B. The systematic study of how meaning is structured, expressed, and understood
C. The process of translating documents
D. The relationship between terms

Answer: B. The systematic study of how meaning is structured, expressed, and understood

Explanation: Semantics refers to the systematic study of how meaning is structured, expressed, and understood in the use of an indexing language.

59. How is the quality of an index defined?

A. By its length
B. By its retrieval effectiveness
C. By the number of terms used
D. By the ease of translation

Answer: B. By its retrieval effectiveness

Explanation: The quality of an index is defined in terms of its retrieval effectiveness—the ability to retrieve what is wanted and to avoid what is not.

60. What are the two factors that affect the quality of indexing?

A. Length of the index and number of terms used
B. Retrieval effectiveness and ease of translation
C. Qualification and expertise of the indexer, and quality of the indexing tools
D. Syntax and semantics

Answer: C. Qualification and expertise of the indexer, and quality of the indexing tools

Explanation: The quality of indexing depends on the qualification and expertise of the indexer and the quality of the indexing tools used.

61. What is indexing consistency essential for?

A. Cataloguing accuracy
B. Effective retrieval
C. Data entry efficiency
D. Document classification

Answer: B. Effective retrieval

Explanation: Indexing consistency is essential for effective retrieval because it ensures agreement on the terms used to index a document, which in turn enhances the accuracy and efficiency of the retrieval process.

62. How is indexing consistency defined according to Lancaster (2003)?

A. The extent of agreement on cataloguing methods
B. The extent to which agreement exists on the terms to be used to index some document
C. The similarity of document classification
D. The accuracy of data entry

Answer: B. The extent to which agreement exists on the terms to be used to index some document

Explanation: According to Lancaster (2003), indexing consistency refers to the extent to which agreement exists on the terms to be used to index some document.

63. What is indexing consistency a measure of?

A. Cataloguing speed
B. Similarity of reaction of different human beings processing the same information
C. Accuracy of data entry
D. Document classification methods

Answer: B. Similarity of reaction of different human beings processing the same information

Explanation: Indexing consistency is a measure of the similarity of reaction of different human beings processing the same information.

64. How is indexing consistency in a group of indexers defined?

A. Agreement on the classification system
B. Degree of agreement in the representation of the essential information content of the document
C. Accuracy of the indexing terms
D. Speed of data entry

Answer: B. Degree of agreement in the representation of the essential information content of the document

Explanation: Indexing consistency in a group of indexers is defined as the degree of agreement in the representation of the essential information content of the document by certain sets of indexing terms selected individually and independently by each of the indexers in the group.

65. What does the evaluation of an indexing system essentially mean?

A. Measuring the length of the index
B. Measuring the performance of the system in terms of retrieval efficiency and internal operating efficiency
C. Assessing the accuracy of data entry
D. Evaluating the classification methods

Answer: B. Measuring the performance of the system in terms of retrieval efficiency and internal operating efficiency

Explanation: Evaluation of an indexing system essentially means measuring the performance of the system in terms of its retrieval efficiency (ease of approach, speed, and accuracy) to the users, and its internal operating efficiency, cost effectiveness, and cost benefit to the managers of the system.

66. When was the Institute of Information Scientists founded in the UK?

A. 1950
B. 1958
C. 1960
D. 1966

Answer: B. 1958

Explanation: The Institute of Information Scientists in the UK was founded in 1958.

67. What coincides closely with the beginning of the notion of experimental evaluation of information retrieval systems?

A. Foundation of the Institute of Information Scientists
B. Publication of SCI
C. Development of the KWIC index
D. Launch of SCISEARCH

Answer: A. Foundation of the Institute of Information Scientists

Explanation: The foundation of the Institute of Information Scientists in the UK in 1958 coincides closely with the beginning of the notion of experimental evaluation of information retrieval systems.

68. When did the Cranfield experiments run?

A. 1950-1958
B. 1958-1966
C. 1960-1970
D. 1966-1974

Answer: B. 1958-1966

Explanation: The Cranfield experiments, which are often marked as the start of the tradition of experimental evaluation of information retrieval systems, ran from 1958 to 1966.

69. How can the effectiveness of an indexing system be measured?

A. By calculation of recall and precision ratios
B. By the speed of document retrieval
C. By the accuracy of cataloguing
D. By the number of documents indexed

Answer: A. By calculation of recall and precision ratios

Explanation: The effectiveness of an indexing system can be measured by calculating recall and precision ratios, which assess the completeness and preciseness of the output.

70. What does recall refer to in an indexing system?

A. The index's ability to retrieve documents quickly
B. The index's ability to retrieve only relevant documents
C. The index's ability to let relevant documents through the filter
D. The index's ability to store documents

Answer: C. The index's ability to let relevant documents through the filter

Explanation: Recall refers to the index's ability to let relevant documents through the filter and measures the completeness of the output.

71. What is the formula for calculating the recall ratio?

A. Recall ratio = (R / L) × 100
B. Recall ratio = (R / C) × 100
C. Recall ratio = (L / R) × 100
D. Recall ratio = (C / R) × 100

Answer: B. Recall ratio = (R / C) × 100

Explanation: The recall ratio is calculated as the number of relevant documents retrieved (R) divided by the total number of relevant documents available (C), multiplied by 100.

72. What does precision refer to in an indexing system?

A. The index's ability to retrieve documents quickly
B. The index's ability to let all documents through
C. The index's ability to hold back documents not relevant to the user
D. The index's ability to store documents

Answer: C. The index's ability to hold back documents not relevant to the user

Explanation: Precision refers to the index's ability to hold back documents that are not relevant to the user, thereby measuring how precisely the system functions.

73. What is the formula for calculating the precision ratio?

A. Precision Ratio = (R / L) × 100
B. Precision Ratio = (R / C) × 100
C. Precision Ratio = (L / R) × 100
D. Precision Ratio = (C / R) × 100

Answer: A. Precision Ratio = (R / L) × 100

Explanation: The precision ratio is calculated as the number of relevant documents retrieved (R) divided by the total number of documents retrieved (L), multiplied by 100.

74. What are the two parts into which search results are separated?

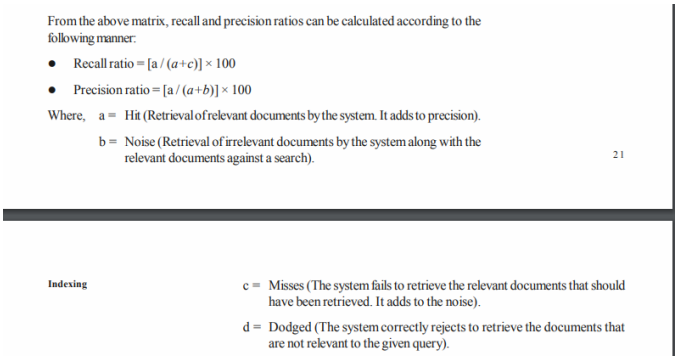
A. Relevant documents and catalogued documents
B. Indexed documents and non-indexed documents
C. Relevant documents and irrelevant documents
D. Catalogued documents and indexed documents

Answer: C. Relevant documents and irrelevant documents

Explanation: The search result against a query separates all documents into two parts: relevant documents and irrelevant documents.

	←User relevance decision→		
Retrieved	a Hits	b Noise	a + b Total retrieved
Not retrieved	c Misses	d Dodged	c + d Total not retrieved
Total	a + c Total relevant	b + d Total not relevant	a + b + c + d Total collection

Source: IGNOU BLIS book



From the above matrix, recall and precision ratios can be calculated according to the following manner:

- Recall ratio = [a / (a+c)] × 100
- Precision ratio = [a / (a+b)] × 100

Where, a = Hit (Retrieval of relevant documents by the system. It adds to precision).

b = Noise (Retrieval of irrelevant documents by the system along with the relevant documents against a search).

21

Indexing

c = Misses (The system fails to retrieve the relevant documents that should have been retrieved. It adds to the noise).

d = Dodged (The system correctly rejects to retrieve the documents that are not relevant to the given query).

Source:IGNOU BLIS book

75. Who brought the concept of evaluation into information retrieval systems during the 1950s?

A. Perry and Kent
B. Ranganathan and Dewey
C. Cutter and Kaiser
D. Farradane and Coates

Answer: A. Perry and Kent

Explanation: Perry and Kent are credited for bringing the concept of evaluation into information retrieval systems during the 1950s.

76. What does the resolution factor represent in evaluation criteria?

A. The proportion of relevant items retrieved over the total number of retrieved items

B. The proportion of total items retrieved over the total number of items in the collection
C. The proportion of non-retrieved items over the total items in the collection
D. The proportion of retrieved items that are not relevant

Answer: B. The proportion of total items retrieved over the total number of items in the collection

Explanation: The resolution factor represents the proportion of total items retrieved over the total number of items in the collection.

77. What is another name for the pertinency factor in subsequent evaluation studies?

A. Recall ratio
B. Resolution factor
C. Precision ratio
D. Omission factor

Answer: C. Precision ratio

Explanation: The pertinency factor is popularly named as the precision ratio in subsequent evaluation studies.

78. What does the recall factor represent?

A. The proportion of relevant items retrieved over the total number of retrieved items
B. The proportion of relevant items retrieved over the total number of relevant items in the collection
C. The proportion of non-relevant items retrieved over the total number of non-retrieved items in the collection
D. The proportion of total items retrieved over the total number of items in the collection

Answer: B. The proportion of relevant items retrieved over the total number of relevant items in the collection

Explanation: The recall factor represents the proportion of relevant items retrieved over the total number of relevant items in the collection.

79. What does the elimination factor measure?

A. The proportion of retrieved items that are not relevant
B. The proportion of non-retrieved items over the total items in the collection
C. The proportion of relevant items retrieved over the total number of relevant items in the collection
D. The proportion of total items retrieved over the total number of items in the collection

Answer: B. The proportion of non-retrieved items over the total items in the collection

Explanation: The elimination factor measures the proportion of non-retrieved items (both relevant and non-relevant) over the total items in the collection.

80. What is the noise factor in the context of evaluation criteria?

A. The proportion of non-retrieved items over the total items in the collection
B. The proportion of relevant items retrieved over the total number of relevant items in the collection
C. The proportion of retrieved items that are not relevant
D. The proportion of total items retrieved over the total number of items in the collection

Answer: C. The proportion of retrieved items that are not relevant

Explanation: The noise factor represents the proportion of retrieved items that are not relevant and is considered the complement of the pertinency factor.

81. What does the omission factor represent?

A. The proportion of non-relevant items retrieved over the total number of non-retrieved items in the collection
B. The proportion of relevant items retrieved over the total number of retrieved items
C. The proportion of total items retrieved over the total number of items in the collection
D. The proportion of relevant items retrieved over the total number of relevant items in the collection

Answer: A. The proportion of non-relevant items retrieved over the total number of non-retrieved items in the collection

Explanation: The omission factor represents the proportion of non-relevant items retrieved over the total number of non-retrieved items in the collection.

82. What is the formula for calculating the resolution factor?

A. R / C
B. L / N
C. (N—L) / N
D. R / L

Answer: B. L / N

Explanation: The formula for calculating the resolution factor is L / N, where L is the number of retrieved documents and N is the total number of documents.

83. What is the formula for calculating the elimination factor?

A. R / C
B. L / N
C. (N—L) / N
D. R / L

Answer: C. (N—L) / N

Explanation: The formula for calculating the elimination factor is (N—L) / N, where N is the total number of documents and L is the number of retrieved documents.

84. What is the formula for calculating the noise factor?

A. (L—R) / L
B. L / N
C. R / C
D. (N—L) / N

Answer: A. (L—R) / L

Explanation: The formula for calculating the noise factor is (L—R) / L, where L is the number of retrieved documents and R is the number of documents that are both retrieved and relevant.

85. What is the formula for calculating the recall factor?

A. R / L
B. (L—R) / L
C. R / C
D. (N—L) / N

Answer: C. R / C

Explanation: The formula for calculating the recall factor is R / C, where R is the number of relevant documents retrieved and C is the total number of relevant documents.

86. What is the formula for calculating the omission factor?

A. R / C
B. (C—R) / C
C. (L—R) / L
D. (N—L) / N

Answer: B. (C—R) / C

Explanation: The formula for calculating the omission factor is (C—R) / C, where C is the total number of relevant documents and R is the number of relevant documents retrieved.

87. Who identified six criteria for the evaluation of an information retrieval system?

A. H. P. Luhn
B. Ranganathan
C. C. W. Cleverdon
D. Perry and Kent

Answer: C. C. W. Cleverdon

Explanation: C. W. Cleverdon (1966) identified six criteria for the evaluation of an information retrieval system.

88. What does the recall criterion refer to in an information retrieval system according to C. C. W. Cleverdon?

A. The time elapsing between the submission of a request and the receipt of the search results
B. The ability of the system to present all the relevant items
C. The intellectual effort required from the user
D. The extent to which the system includes relevant matter

Answer: B. The ability of the system to present all the relevant items

Explanation: Recall refers to the ability of the system to present all the relevant items.

89. What does the precision criterion refer to according to C. C. W. Cleverdon?

A. The ability of the system to present only those items that are relevant
B. The time elapsing between the submission of a request and the receipt of the search results
C. The form of presentation of the search output
D. The extent to which the system includes relevant matter

Answer: A. The ability of the system to present only those items that are relevant

Explanation: Precision refers to the ability of the system to present only those items that are relevant.

90. What does the time lag criterion refer to according to C. C. W. Cleverdon?

A. The effort required from the user in obtaining answers to the search requests
B. The ability of the system to present all the relevant items
C. The time elapsing between the submission of a request and the receipt of the search results
D. The extent to which the system includes relevant matter

Answer: C. The time elapsing between the submission of a request and the receipt of the search results

Explanation: Time lag refers to the time elapsing between the submission of a request by the user and his receipt of the search results.

91. What does the user effort criterion refer to according to C. C. W. Cleverdon?

A. The intellectual as well as physical effort required from the user in obtaining answers to the search requests
B. The ability of the system to present only those items that are relevant
C. The form of presentation of the search output
D. The extent to which the system includes relevant matter

Answer: A. The intellectual as well as physical effort required from the user in obtaining answers to the search requests

Explanation: User effort refers to the intellectual as well as physical effort required from the user in obtaining answers to the search requests.

92. What does the form of presentation criterion affect according to C. C. W. Cleverdon?

A. The completeness of the collection
B. The ability to make use of the retrieved items
C. The ability to present only relevant items
D. The time elapsing between the submission of a request and the receipt of the search results

Answer: B. The ability to make use of the retrieved items

Explanation: The form of presentation of the search output affects the user's ability to make use of the retrieved items.

93. What does the coverage of the collection criterion refer to according to C. C. W. Cleverdon?

A. The intellectual effort required from the user
B. The ability of the system to present only relevant items
C. The extent to which the system includes relevant matter

D. The time elapsing between the submission of a request and the receipt of the search results

Answer: C. The extent to which the system includes relevant matter

Explanation: Coverage of the collection refers to the extent to which the system includes relevant matter and is a measure of the completeness of the collection.

94. What was the objective of the Cranfield 1 Project?

A. To evaluate the Medical Literature Analysis and Retrieval System (MEDLARS)
B. To investigate the comparative efficiency of four indexing systems
C. To measure the recall and precision of indexing systems
D. To develop a new classification scheme for libraries

Answer: B. To investigate the comparative efficiency of four indexing systems

Explanation: The Cranfield 1 Project aimed to investigate the comparative efficiency of four indexing systems: UDC, Faceted Classification, Alphabetical Subject Heading List, and Uniterm Indexing system.

More info: Cranfield Test The first extensive evaluation of retrieval systems was carried out by the ASLIB with financial assistance from the National Science Foundation at the College of Aeronautics, Cranfield, UK, under the supervision of C. W. Cleverdon in 1957. It is popularly known as the Cranfield 1 Project. Its objective was to investigate into the comparative efficiency of four indexing systems: UDC, Faceted Classification, Alphabetical Subject Heading List and Uniterm Indexing system. Cranfield 1 was the most significant study in the decade of 1958-68. Even then it was not free from criticisms. One of the main criticisms against this study was the artificiality without much relation to the real-life situation. The drawbacks of Cranfield 1 necessitated the conduct of further tests. The second stage of Cranfield studies, known as Cranfield 2, began in 1963 and completed in 1966.

Source: IGNOU BLIS book

95. Who supervised the Cranfield 1 Project?

A. Perry and Kent
B. H. P. Luhn
C. C. W. Cleverdon
D. Eugene Garfield

Answer: C. C. W. Cleverdon

Explanation: The Cranfield 1 Project was supervised by C. W. Cleverdon.

96. What was one of the main criticisms of the Cranfield 1 Project?

A. Lack of financial support
B. Artificiality without much relation to real-life situations
C. Insufficient number of indexing systems tested
D. Inaccurate recall and precision calculations

Answer: B. Artificiality without much relation to real-life situations

Explanation: One of the main criticisms of the Cranfield 1 Project was its artificiality without much relation to real-life situations.

97. When did the Cranfield 2 Project begin and end?

A. 1960-1962
B. 1963-1966
C. 1966-1969
D. 1970-1973

Answer: B. 1963-1966

Explanation: The Cranfield 2 Project began in 1963 and was completed in 1966.

98. Who conducted the largest evaluation of the MEDLARS system?

A. Perry and Kent
B. C. W. Cleverdon

C. Eugene Garfield
D. Lancaster

Answer: D. Lancaster

Explanation: Lancaster conducted the largest evaluation of the MEDLARS system.

More info: MEDLARS Test The largest evaluation of an operating system was performed by Lancaster on the performance of the Medical Literature Analysis and Retrieval System (MEDLARS) of the US National Library of Medicine in the period between August 1966 and July 1967. The study involved the derivation of performance figures and conduct of details of failure analyses for a sample of 3000 real searches conducted in 1966-67. The objective of the MEDLARS test was to evaluate the existing system and to find out how it could be improved. The document collection available on the MEDLARS service at the time of the test consisted of about 700,000 items. Search requests from twentyone user groups, selected for the study were taken. On receipt of a request, the system operator formulated it in Mesh(Medical Subject Headings) terms using expansion and search logic.

Source: IGNOU BLIS book

99. What was the main objective of the MEDLARS test?

A. To compare different indexing systems
B. To evaluate the existing system and find out how it could be improved
C. To develop a new retrieval system for medical literature
D. To measure the precision of the MEDLARS system

Answer: B. To evaluate the existing system and find out how it could be improved

Explanation: The main objective of the MEDLARS test was to evaluate the existing system and find out how it could be improved.

100. How many items were in the document collection available on the MEDLARS service at the time of the test?

A. 300,000
B. 500,000
C. 700,000
D. 900,000

Answer: C. 700,000

Explanation: The document collection available on the MEDLARS service at the time of the test consisted of about 700,000 items.

101. How were many user groups' search requests selected for the MEDLARS test study?

A. 15
B. 18
C. 21
D. 25

Answer: C. 21

Explanation: Search requests from twenty-one user groups were selected for the MEDLARS test study.

94. What was the main purpose of the Text Retrieval Conference (TREC) launched in 1991?

A. To develop a new classification system for libraries
B. To introduce a large test collection of full-text documents for IR research
C. To evaluate the MEDLARS system
D. To investigate the efficiency of different indexing systems

Answer: B. To introduce a large test collection of full-text documents for IR research

Explanation: The Text Retrieval Conference (TREC) was launched to introduce the first large test collection of full-text documents, enabling IR researchers to scale up from small data collections to larger experiments.

95. Which organizations funded and operated the TREC?

A. ASLIB and National Science Foundation
B. DARPA and NIST
C. US National Library of Medicine and Mesh
D. ISI and Eugene Garfield

Answer: B. DARPA and NIST

Explanation: TREC was funded by DARPA (Defence Advanced Research Project Agency) and operated by NIST (National Institute for Science and Technology).

96. When did the first TREC experiment take place?

A. 1991
B. 1992
C. 1995
D. 1998

Answer: B. 1992

Explanation: The first TREC experiment took place in 1992.

97. Who developed the Library of Congress Subject Headings?

A. Dr. S. R. Ranganathan
B. Eugene Garfield
C. Perry and Kent
D. Library of Congress

Answer: D. Library of Congress

Explanation: The Library of Congress Subject Headings were developed by the Library of Congress in 1897.

98. What is the significance of the chain indexing system developed by Dr. S. R. Ranganathan?

A. It was the first computerized pre-coordinate indexing system
B. It supplemented the classified catalogue
C. It was introduced in the Text Retrieval Conference (TREC)
D. It was used in the MEDLARS system

Answer: B. It supplemented the classified catalogue

Explanation: Dr. S. R. Ranganathan developed the chain indexing system to supplement the classified catalogue in 1934.

99. What indexing system was developed by Derek Austin in 1969?

A. Chain Indexing
B. PRECIS (Preserved Context Index System)
C. POPSI (Postulate-based Permuted Subject Indexing)
D. Uniterm Indexing system

Answer: B. PRECIS (Preserved Context Index System)

Explanation: Derek Austin developed the Preserved Context Index System (PRECIS) in 1969, which was applied in BNB in 1971.

100. What is POPSI and who developed it?

A. A computerized pre-coordinate indexing system developed by Derek Austin
B. An indexing system developed to rectify the defects of chain procedure from a different perspective
C. An evaluation method for MEDLARS
D. An indexing system used in the Text Retrieval Conference (TREC)

Answer: B. An indexing system developed to rectify the defects of chain procedure from a different perspective

Explanation: POPSI (Postulate-based Permuted Subject Indexing) was developed in 1969 to rectify the defects of the chain procedure from a different perspective.

101. What is the primary objective of TREC as an open testing event?

A. To develop new indexing languages
B. To conduct annual competitions and collaborations for IR research
C. To test small collections of data
D. To create new subject headings for libraries

Answer: B. To conduct annual competitions and collaborations for IR research

Explanation: The primary objective of TREC is to conduct annual competitions and collaborations between research groups interested in different aspects of information retrieval, with common tasks and a standard evaluation scenario.

BLI 223 BLOCK 3 UNIT 10 INDEXING LANGUAGES

1. What is the function of an indexing language (IL)?

A. To replace natural language entirely
B. To organize semantic content and provide access to information seekers
C. To create new natural languages
D. To eliminate the need for controlled vocabulary

Answer: B. To organize semantic content and provide access to information seekers

Explanation: The function of an IL is to organize semantic content through different expressions, providing a point of access to seekers of information.

2. What are the three basic elements of all spoken languages (natural language)?

A. Vocabulary, syntax, and semantics
B. Vocabulary, syntax, and pragmatics
C. Syntax, semantics, and phonetics
D. Syntax, pragmatics, and phonetics

Answer: A. Vocabulary, syntax, and semantics

Explanation: All spoken languages consist of three basic elements: vocabulary, syntax, and semantics.

3. In the context of an indexing language, what is controlled vocabulary?

A. A list of random terms used in a particular discipline
B. A systematically structured vocabulary indicating relationships between terms
C. A free vocabulary without any control
D. A vocabulary that replaces syntax and semantics

Answer: B. A systematically structured vocabulary indicating relationships between terms

Explanation: Controlled vocabulary in an IL attempts to indicate the relationship between terms in the index vocabulary in a systematically structured manner.

4. Which of the following employs coded vocabulary in the form of notation?

A. Subject heading lists
B. Thesauri
C. Classification schemes
D. Natural language

Answer: C. Classification schemes

Explanation: A classification scheme uses coded vocabulary in the form of notation.

5. What is an example of how 'Indian History' is rendered in Colon Classification (CC)?

A. India - History
B. History of India
C. V44
D. IndianHistory

Answer: C. V44

Explanation: In Colon Classification (CC) Schedule, 'Indian History' is rendered as V44.

6. How is 'Indian History' rendered in Sear's List of Subject Headings?

A. India - History
B. History of India
C. V44
D. IndianHistory

Answer: A. India - History

Explanation: In Sear's List of Subject Headings, 'Indian History' is rendered as India - History.

7. What is Thesaurofacet?

A. A type of natural language
B. A classification scheme
C. A controlled vocabulary with both verbal and coded characteristics
D. A list of subject headings

Answer: C. A controlled vocabulary with both verbal and coded characteristics

Explanation: Thesaurofacet is a controlled vocabulary that possesses both verbal and coded characteristics.

8. What is the primary step in the selection of terms to be used in each discipline for an IL?

A. Coding
B. Syntax
C. Vocabulary selection
D. Semantics

Answer: C. Vocabulary selection

Explanation: The primary step in the selection of terms to be used in each discipline for an IL is vocabulary selection. Coding is done at a later stage.

9. What is the etymological meaning of 'syntax' in the context of an indexing language?

A. Creating new words
B. Eliminating redundancy
C. Putting things together in an orderly manner
D. Random arrangement of terms

Answer: C. Putting things together in an orderly manner

Explanation: Syntax in the context of an indexing language refers to a set of rules or grammar governing the sequence of words in a subject heading or notations in a classification number.

10. What does semantics refer to in an indexing language?

A. The random selection of terms
B. The systematic study of meaning
C. The physical arrangement of documents
D. The creation of new vocabulary

Answer: B. The systematic study of meaning

Explanation: Semantics refers to the systematic study of how meaning is structured, expressed, and understood in the use of an indexing language.

11. Which type of relationships are evident in an indexing language?

A. Equivalence relationships
B. Hierarchical relationships
C. Associative relationships
D. All of the above

Answer: D. All of the above

Explanation: Various types of semantic relationships evident in an indexing language include equivalence relationships, hierarchical relationships, and associative relationships.

12. What is the purpose of vocabulary control in an indexing language?

A. To create multiple terms for the same concept
B. To standardize terms so one concept is denoted by only one term
C. To eliminate the use of controlled vocabulary
D. To increase the number of homographs

Answer: B. To standardize terms so one concept is denoted by only one term

Explanation: Vocabulary control standardizes terms by controlling synonyms, near-synonyms, and word forms, and by distinguishing among homographs.

13. In pre-coordinate indexing, when is the coordination of concepts carried out?

A. At the time of searching
B. During the publication process
C. At the time of indexing
D. After the document is retrieved

Answer: C. At the time of indexing

Explanation: In pre-coordinate indexing, the coordination of concepts is carried out by the indexer at the time of indexing (input stage).

14. What does the mechanism for multiple index entries provide?

A. Single access to the index file
B. Multiple access by rotating or cycling component terms
C. Elimination of all user approaches
D. Fixed order of significance

Answer: B. Multiple access by rotating or cycling component terms

Explanation: The mechanism for multiple index entries provides multiple access by rotating or cycling the component terms, allowing each term to be in the lead position at least once.

15. What is the purpose of a syndetic device in indexing language?

A. To create a random assortment of terms
B. To link related subjects in a classificatory structure
C. To eliminate cross references
D. To ensure rigidity in the index file

Answer: B. To link related subjects in a classificatory structure

Explanation: A syndetic device is an organizational framework in which related subjects are linked together in an underlying classificatory structure.

16. What do cross references such as 'See also' and 'See / USE / UF' accomplish?

A. They create unrelated terms
B. They link related and equivalent subjects
C. They eliminate vocabulary control
D. They remove hierarchical relationships

Answer: B. They link related and equivalent subjects

Explanation: Cross references link related and equivalent subjects by a network of references via connecting terms such as 'See also' and 'See / USE / UF.'

17. Why is inversion of headings used in indexing language?

A. To maintain the natural language order
B. To create redundancy
C. To make the most significant word the first word
D. To eliminate controlled vocabulary

Answer: C. To make the most significant word the first word

Explanation: Inversion of headings is used to ensure that the first word in a subject heading is the most significant, which may involve inverting the natural language order of terms.

18. What are the two types of relationships identified by J. C. Gardin's team during the SYNTOL programme?

A. Logical and physical
B. Paradigmatic and syntagmatic
C. Temporal and spatial
D. Quantitative and qualitative

Answer: B. Paradigmatic and syntagmatic

Explanation: The SYNTOL programme identified paradigmatic (semantic or generic) and syntagmatic (syntactical) relationships as two kinds of relationships in indexing languages.

19. How are paradigmatic relationships usually expressed?

A. Through random selection of terms
B. Through successive degrees of subordination
C. By physical arrangement of documents
D. By random combination of words

Answer: B. Through successive degrees of subordination

Explanation: Paradigmatic relationships are usually expressed through the successive degrees of subordination in classification schedules, and through hierarchical relationships in subject headings or thesauri with indicators like BT (Broader Term) and NT (Narrower Term).

20. What is a key feature of paradigmatic relationships?

A. They are document-dependent
B. They are established without reference to a document
C. They rely on user interpretation
D. They change frequently based on context

Answer: B. They are established without reference to a document

Explanation: Paradigmatic relationships are document-independent, meaning they are established without any reference to a specific document.

21. What do syntagmatic relationships rely on?

A. Random selection of terms
B. Syntactical rules of the indexing language
C. Physical arrangement of documents
D. User's subjective interpretation

Answer: B. Syntactical rules of the indexing language

Explanation: Syntagmatic relationships, also called syntactical relationships, rely on syntactical rules of the given indexing language to coordinate terms and express complex meanings.

22. What are two major syntactic devices used in indexing languages?

A. Random term order and user input
B. Term order and relators or linking mechanisms
C. Physical arrangement and color coding
D. Random selection and significance

Answer: B. Term order and relators or linking mechanisms

Explanation: Two major syntactic devices in indexing languages are the use of term order and relators or linking mechanisms, which help in expressing syntactical relationships.

23. Which examples illustrate formulae for determining term order in indexing languages?

A. Kaiser's Thing—Process, Ranganathan's PMEST, Coates's Thing—Material—Action
B. Dewey Decimal System, Library of Congress Classification
C. Alphabetical order, Chronological order
D. User-defined order, Random order

Answer: A. Kaiser's Thing—Process, Ranganathan's PMEST, Coates's Thing—Material—Action

Explanation: Kaiser's Thing—Process, Ranganathan's PMEST, and Coates's Thing—Material—Action are examples of formulae for determining term order in indexing languages.

24. What major principle underlies the term order in indexing languages?

A. Randomness
B. User preference
C. Significance
D. Chronology

Answer: C. Significance

Explanation: The principle of significance underlies the term order in indexing languages, ensuring that terms are ordered in a meaningful and standardized way.

25. How are relationships displayed in different indexing languages?

A. Through notation only
B. Through relationship indicators in verbal indexing languages and notation in classification schemes
C. Through synonyms only
D. Through uncontrolled vocabulary

Answer: B. Through relationship indicators in verbal indexing languages and notation in classification schemes

Explanation: In indexing languages, relationships are displayed through notation in classification schemes and through relationship indicators like BT (Broader Term) and NT (Narrower Term) in verbal indexing languages.

26. What does the term "vocabulary control" refer to?

A. An unlimited set of terms from natural language
B. A list of terms showing relationships and indicating their useful combinations
C. Random selection of terms
D. The free use of natural language terms

Answer: B. A list of terms showing relationships and indicating their useful combinations

Explanation: Vocabulary control refers to a controlled set of terms used to index and search documents, including a list of terms that shows their relationships and how they can be combined.

27. What is the basic objective of controlled vocabularies?

A. To increase the number of terms used
B. To provide a means for organizing information
C. To avoid using any predefined terms
D. To allow for random term usage

Answer: B. To provide a means for organizing information

Explanation: The primary objective of controlled vocabularies is to organize information by using a

set of standardized terms for indexing and retrieval.

28. Which of the following is NOT a purpose of controlled vocabularies?

A. Translation of natural language terms
B. Promotion of term consistency
C. Indication of semantic relationships
D. Use of uncontrolled vocabulary

Answer: D. Use of uncontrolled vocabulary

Explanation: Controlled vocabularies aim to provide structured and consistent term usage, not the use of uncontrolled or free vocabulary.

29. How is the control of terminology achieved in controlled vocabularies?

A. By allowing any form of term to be used
B. By random selection of synonyms
C. By controlling grammatical form, spelling, and choice of synonyms
D. By using natural language terms without modification

Answer: C. By controlling grammatical form, spelling, and choice of synonyms

Explanation: Control of terminology involves managing the form of terms, selecting between synonyms, and distinguishing homographs.

30. What is the purpose of distinguishing between synonyms and quasi-synonyms in controlled vocabularies?

A. To create more terms for indexing
B. To ensure consistency and clarity in term usage
C. To use the most complex terms
D. To avoid using any controlled terms

Answer: B. To ensure consistency and clarity in term usage

Explanation: Distinguishing between synonyms and quasi-synonyms helps ensure consistency and clarity in the controlled vocabulary, allowing for a preferred term and proper reference from variants.

31. How are homographs distinguished in controlled vocabularies?

A. By using random qualifiers
B. By using parenthetical qualifiers or scope notes
C. By combining them with synonyms
D. By ignoring their different meanings

Answer: B. By using parenthetical qualifiers or scope notes

Explanation: Homographs, which are words with the same spelling but different meanings, are distinguished in controlled vocabularies using parenthetical qualifiers or scope notes.

32. What is the second objective of the vocabulary control device?

A. To randomize term usage
B. To link semantically related terms for comprehensive searches
C. To avoid using related terms
D. To create unrelated term lists

Answer: B. To link semantically related terms for comprehensive searches

Explanation: The second objective of vocabulary control is to link semantically related terms to facilitate comprehensive searches, including both hierarchical and associative relationships.

33. How does WebDewey enhance access compared to the print version?

A. By limiting access to DDC numbers only
B. By combining DDC numbers with Library of Congress Subject Headings (LCSH)
C. By removing pre-built numbers
D. By excluding subject headings

Answer: B. By combining DDC numbers with Library of Congress Subject Headings (LCSH)

Explanation: WebDewey enhances access by combining DDC numbers with Library of Congress Subject Headings (LCSH), providing additional points of access and pre-built numbers not available in the print version.

34. What is a subject heading list?

A. A random list of terms
B. An alphabetical list of terms with cross-references and notes

C. A list of terms without any cross-references
D. A list of unrelated terms

Answer: B. An alphabetical list of terms with cross-references and notes

Explanation: A subject heading list is an alphabetical list of terms and phrases with appropriate cross-references and notes used to represent the subject content of documents.

35. What roles do subject heading lists play in a controlled vocabulary system?

A. They provide random term selection
B. They are a source of subject headings for cataloguing documents
C. They eliminate the need for cross-references
D. They are used to generate new terms without standardization

Answer: B. They are a source of subject headings for cataloguing documents

Explanation: Subject heading lists are used to represent the subject content of documents by providing a standardized list of terms for cataloguing and organizing information.

36. Who formulated the rules for subject headings in a dictionary catalogue?

A. Derek Austin
B. Charles Ammi Cutter
C. J. C. Gardin
D. Ranganathan

Answer: B. Charles Ammi Cutter

Explanation: Charles Ammi Cutter formulated the rules for subject headings in a dictionary catalogue in his 1876 work 'Rules for a Dictionary Catalog'.

37. What is the purpose of 'See (or USE) references' in subject headings?

A. To introduce new terms
B. To guide users from non-authorized headings to authorized headings
C. To create new subject headings
D. To eliminate the need for cross-references

Answer: B. To guide users from non-authorized headings to authorized headings

Explanation: 'See (or USE) references' guide users from terms not used as headings to the authorized headings for the subject in question, ensuring users can locate materials despite different names.

38. What do 'See also (including BT, NT, and RT) references' do in subject headings?

A. Direct users to unrelated headings
B. Guide users to related headings, either hierarchically or associatively
C. Provide random links between terms
D. Eliminate the need for specific headings

Answer: B. Guide users to related headings, either hierarchically or associatively

Explanation: 'See also (including BT, NT, and RT) references' guide users to related headings, helping them explore material related to their interest, whether through hierarchical or associative relationships.

39. What are general references in subject headings used for?

A. To direct users to individual headings
B. To provide a blanket reference to a group or category of headings
C. To create long lists of specific references
D. To introduce new subject headings

Answer: B. To provide a blanket reference to a group or category of headings

Explanation: General references direct users to a group or category of headings instead of individual headings, helping to economize space and avoid lengthy lists.

40. What is the role of a subject authority file?

A. To create new subject headings
B. To ensure uniformity and consistency in subject heading terminology and cross-references
C. To provide random term usage
D. To eliminate the need for subject headings

Answer: B. To ensure uniformity and consistency in subject heading terminology and cross-references

Explanation: A subject authority file ensures uniformity and consistency in subject heading terminology and cross-references by providing authorized forms of terms and managing their relationships.

41. What does subject authority control involve at the central level?

A. Creating local subject authority records
B. Maintaining the subject authority file or heading list and making updates
C. Correcting erroneous headings
D. Updating obsolete headings

Answer: B. Maintaining the subject authority file or heading list and making updates

Explanation: At the central level, subject authority control involves maintaining the subject authority file or heading list and making changes to existing headings, cross-references, and adding new ones.

42. According to the ALA Glossary, what does a subject authority file consist of?

A. Only a list of authorized terms
B. A set of records indicating authorized terms, references, and establishment information
C. A list of unrelated subject headings
D. A compilation of random terms

Answer: B. A set of records indicating authorized terms, references, and establishment information

Explanation: The ALA Glossary defines a subject authority file as a set of records indicating authorized forms of terms, references to and from these forms, and information used in their establishment.

43. What does the term "thesaurus" originally mean in Greek and Latin?

A. Dictionary
B. Library
C. Treasury
D. Archive

Answer: C. Treasury

Explanation: The term "thesaurus" comes from Greek and Latin words meaning "treasury" or "storehouse," referring to a collection of knowledge or words.

44. When was the first edition of "Thesaurus of English Words and Phrases" published?

A. 1736
B. 1852
C. 1957
D. 1969

Answer: B. 1852

Explanation: The first edition of "Thesaurus of English Words and Phrases," published by Peter Mark Roget, appeared in 1852 and is considered a modern usage of the term "thesaurus."

45. What was the primary focus of Peter Mark Roget's Thesaurus?

A. Word definitions
B. Classification of ideas
C. Historical texts
D. Grammar rules

Answer: B. Classification of ideas

Explanation: Peter Mark Roget's Thesaurus focused on classifying ideas and showing the words that most fitly expressed a given idea.

46. When did the term "thesaurus" first appear in the Oxford English Dictionary (OED)?

A. 1736
B. 1852
C. 1957
D. 1969

Answer: A. 1736

Explanation: The term "thesaurus" first appeared in the Oxford English Dictionary (OED) in 1736.

47. Who first brought the idea of "thesaurus" in terms of information retrieval (IR) in 1957?

A. Peter Mark Roget
B. H P Luhn
C. Miss Helen Brownson
D. Du Pont

Answer: C. Miss Helen Brownson

Explanation: In 1957, Miss Helen Brownson presented the idea of a thesaurus in terms of information retrieval at the Dorking Conference.

48. Who developed the first thesaurus used in an information retrieval system in 1969?

A. Peter Mark Roget
B. H P Luhn
C. Miss Helen Brownson
D. Du Pont

Answer: D. Du Pont

Explanation: The first thesaurus used in an information retrieval system was developed by Du Pont in the USA in 1969.

49. According to UNISIST, what is the function of a thesaurus?

A. To translate natural language into a constrained 'system language'
B. To classify knowledge into different domains
C. To provide historical context for terms
D. To standardize grammatical structures

Answer: A. To translate natural language into a constrained 'system language'

Explanation: UNISIST defines a thesaurus as a terminological control device used for translating from natural language into a more constrained 'system language' (documentation language, information language).

50. How does UNISIST define the structure of a thesaurus?

A. As a free vocabulary of unrelated terms
B. As a controlled and dynamic vocabulary of related terms covering a specific domain
C. As a list of historical documents
D. As a set of rules for document formatting

Answer: B. As a controlled and dynamic vocabulary of related terms covering a specific domain

Explanation: UNISIST defines the structure of a thesaurus as a controlled and dynamic vocabulary of semantically and generically related terms that covers a specific domain of knowledge.

51. What are the two types of basic thesaural relationships?

A. Historical and Documental
B. Synonym and Antonym
C. Hierarchical and Non-Hierarchical
D. Verbal and Non-Verbal

Answer: C. Hierarchical and Non-Hierarchical

Explanation: Basic thesaural relationships include hierarchical and non-hierarchical relationships.

52. Which relationship links a genus and species, representing the basis of scientific taxonomy?

A. Whole-Part Relationship
B. Instance Relationship
C. Polyhierarchical Relationship
D. Genus-Species (Generic) Relationship

Answer: D. Genus-Species (Generic) Relationship

Explanation: The Genus-Species (Generic) Relationship links genus and species and represents the basis of scientific taxonomy.

53. How is the Whole-Part Relationship organized in a thesaurus?

A. By linking terms that are logically unrelated
B. By treating one concept as a broader term and the other as a narrower term
C. By categorizing terms into unrelated groups
D. By listing terms alphabetically

Answer: B. By treating one concept as a broader term and the other as a narrower term

Explanation: The Whole-Part Relationship organizes terms by treating one concept as a broader term (whole) and the other as a narrower term (part), regardless of context.

54. What is an example of a Hierarchical Relationship indicator?

A. NT (Narrower Term)
B. RT (Related Term)
C. BT (Broader Term)
D. ST (Specific Term)

Answer: C. BT (Broader Term)

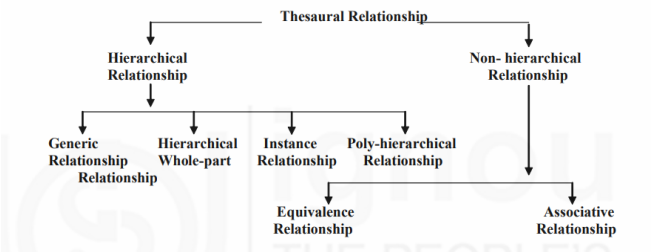
Explanation: Hierarchical relationships use indicators like BT (Broader Term) to label the superordinate term and NT (Narrower Term) for the subordinate term.

55. What type of relationship identifies a link between a general category and specific instances?

A. Whole-Part Relationship
B. Genus-Species (Generic) Relationship
C. Instance Relationship
D. Polyhierarchical Relationship

Answer: C. Instance Relationship

Explanation: The Instance Relationship identifies the link between a general category and specific instances or examples of that category.



Source: IGNOU BLIS Book

56. What does a Polyhierarchical Relationship refer to in a thesaurus?

A. A term belonging to multiple categories based on logical grounds
B. A term representing a specific instance
C. A term with a singular category assignment
D. A term with no hierarchical relationship

Answer: A. A term belonging to multiple categories based on logical grounds

Explanation: A Polyhierarchical Relationship occurs when some concepts logically belong to more than one category, with terms being subordinate to multiple broader terms.

57. What are the two main types of Non-Hierarchical Relationships in a thesaurus?

A. Equivalence and Hierarchical
B. Associative and Polyhierarchical
C. Equivalence and Associative
D. Synonyms and Antonyms

Answer: C. Equivalence and Associative

Explanation: Non-Hierarchical Relationships include Equivalence (or Preferential) Relationships and Associative Relationships.

58. What does an Equivalence (or Preferential) Relationship involve?

A. Relationships between terms in a hierarchy
B. Relationships between preferred and non-preferred terms referring to the same concept
C. Relationships between terms with no semantic connection
D. Relationships involving terms from different domains

Answer: B. Relationships between preferred and non-preferred terms referring to the same concept

Explanation: Equivalence (or Preferential) Relationships involve terms that refer to the same concept, where one term is preferred, and others are non-preferred.

59. What is indicated by the relationship indicator "USE" in a thesaurus?

A. It leads from a non-preferred term to the preferred term
B. It leads from the preferred term to the non-preferred term
C. It shows a broader term
D. It indicates a related term

Answer: A. It leads from a non-preferred term to the preferred term

Explanation: The "USE" indicator directs users from a non-preferred (entry) term to the preferred term.

60. What is the key difference between synonyms and lexical variants?

A. Synonyms are different terms for the same concept, while lexical variants are different forms of the same expression
B. Synonyms are different expressions, while lexical variants are unrelated terms

C. Synonyms are broader terms, while lexical variants are narrower terms
D. Synonyms and lexical variants are essentially the same

Answer: A. Synonyms are different terms for the same concept, while lexical variants are different forms of the same expression

Explanation: Synonyms represent the same concept with different terms, while lexical variants are different forms or spellings of the same expression.

61. In a thesaurus, how are count nouns and mass nouns treated differently?

A. Count nouns are expressed in the singular, and mass nouns in the plural
B. Count nouns are expressed in the plural, and mass nouns in the singular
C. Both count and mass nouns are treated the same
D. Count nouns are not used in thesauri

Answer: B. Count nouns are expressed in the plural, and mass nouns in the singular

Explanation: Count nouns are usually expressed as plurals, while mass nouns are expressed in the singular form.

62. How is Generic Posting used in a thesaurus?

A. By treating the name of a class and its members as equivalents with the class name as the preferred term
B. By listing class names separately from their members
C. By treating each member of a class as a separate category
D. By using non-preferred terms as equivalents

Answer: A. By treating the name of a class and its members as equivalents with the class name as the preferred term

Explanation: Generic Posting treats the class name and its members as equivalents, with the broader class name functioning as the preferred term.

63. What is Thesaurofacet?

A. A faceted classification system for engineering and related topics
B. A dictionary of engineering terminology
C. A thesaurus of literary terms
D. An indexing tool for historical documents

Answer: A. A faceted classification system for engineering and related topics

Explanation: Thesaurofacet is a faceted classification system developed for engineering and related topics, initially derived from the English Electric Company's Faceted Classification for Engineering.

64. When was the first edition of Faceted Classification for Engineering published?

A. 1958
B. 1961
C. 1967
D. 1970

Answer: A. 1958

Explanation: The first edition of Faceted Classification for Engineering was published in 1958.

65. Who was commissioned to review the indexing needs of the English Electric Company leading to the development of Thesaurofacet?

A. Peter Mark Roget
B. Jean Aitchison
C. Charles Ammi Cutter
D. H.P. Luhn

Answer: B. Jean Aitchison

Explanation: Jean Aitchison was commissioned in 1967 to review the indexing needs of the company, resulting in the development of Thesaurofacet.

66. What significant change was made in the 4th edition of the faceted classification system?

A. Introduction of a new classification scheme
B. Replacement of the alphabetised index with a thesaurus

C. Addition of new subject headings
D. Use of a different language for indexing

Answer: B. Replacement of the alphabetised index with a thesaurus

Explanation: In the 4th edition of the faceted classification system, the alphabetised index was replaced with a thesaurus.

67. What year was the Thesaurofacet published?

A. 1958
B. 1961
C. 1967
D. 1970

Answer: D. 1970

Explanation: Thesaurofacet was published in 1970.

68. What is Classaurus?

A. A book on library classification
B. A category-based systematic scheme of hierarchical classification
C. An alphabetical index of library terms
D. A type of digital library software

Answer: B. A category-based systematic scheme of hierarchical classification

Explanation: Classaurus is a category-based (faceted) systematic scheme of hierarchical classification that incorporates features of a conventional IR thesaurus.

69. What feature of Classaurus makes it amenable to computerisation?

A. Its alphabetical arrangement of terms
B. Its focus on RTs (Related Terms)
C. Its use of synonyms and quasi-synonyms
D. Its standardised format for printed catalogues

Answer: A. Its alphabetical arrangement of terms

Explanation: The alphabetical arrangement of terms in Classaurus makes it largely amenable to computerisation.

70. Who is credited with pointing out the need for standardised subject headings in catalogues?

A. Jean Aitchison
B. Charles Ammi Cutter
C. Andrea Crestadoro
D. H.P. Luhn

Answer: C. Andrea Crestadoro

Explanation: Andrea Crestadoro is credited with pointing out the need for standardised subject headings in his book *The Art of Making Catalogues* published in 1856.

71. What was the first standard list of subject headings produced by?

A. The Library of Congress
B. The American Library Association (ALA)
C. The English Electric Company
D. The Classification Research Group

Answer: B. The American Library Association (ALA)

Explanation: The first standard list of subject headings, entitled *List of Subject Headings for Use in Dictionary Catalogues*, was produced by a committee of the ALA in 1895.

72. In what year was the first standard list of subject headings produced?

A. 1856
B. 1895
C. 1967
D. 1970

Answer: B. 1895

Explanation: The first standard list of subject headings was produced in 1895.

73. What is the current title of the list originally published as "Subject Headings Used in the Dictionary Catalogs of the Library of Congress"?

A. Library of Congress Catalog
B. Library of Congress Subject Headings (LCSH)
C. Library of Congress Weekly Lists
D. Library of Congress Index

Answer: B. Library of Congress Subject Headings (LCSH)

Explanation: The list originally titled "Subject Headings Used in the Dictionary Catalogs of the Library of Congress" was renamed Library of Congress Subject Headings (LCSH).

74. In what formats is the Library of Congress Subject Headings (LCSH) list available?

A. Hard copy, microfiche, CD-ROM, and online
B. Only hard copy
C. Only online
D. Only microfiche

Answer: A. Hard copy, microfiche, CD-ROM, and online

Explanation: The LCSH list is available in various formats including hard copy, microfiche, CD-ROM, and online through the Web.

75. How often are updates to the Library of Congress Subject Headings now made available online?

A. Annually
B. Monthly
C. Weekly
D. Daily

Answer: C. Weekly

Explanation: Weekly lists of additions to the LCSH are available online, replacing the monthly printed version that was discontinued at the end of 1994.

76. What is the title of the essential supplementary tool that contains the rules and guidelines for applying LCSH correctly?

A. Subject Cataloguing Manual
B. Subject Headings Manual
C. Library of Congress Index
D. LCSH Weekly List

Answer: B. Subject Headings Manual

Explanation: The Subject Headings Manual is the essential supplementary tool containing the rules and guidelines for applying LCSH correctly.

77. What did the Subject Headings Manual replace?

A. Subject Index Manual
B. Subject Cataloguing Manual: Subject Headings
C. Library of Congress Subject Headings
D. Weekly Lists

Answer: B. Subject Cataloguing Manual: Subject Headings

Explanation: The Subject Headings Manual replaced the Subject Cataloguing Manual: Subject Headings (5th edition, 4 vols. Loose-leaf, 1996) and all of its updates.

78. As of 2007, how many headings and references are contained in the thirtieth edition of the LCSH?

A. 100,000
B. 150,000
C. 200,000
D. Over 280,000

Answer: D. Over 280,000

Explanation: The thirtieth edition of the LCSH (5 volumes, 2007) contains over 280,000 headings and references.

79. What type of subdivisions are used to limit the scope of the concept expressed by a heading to a special subtopic?

A. Geographic subdivisions
B. Form subdivisions
C. Topical subdivisions
D. Free-floating subdivisions

Answer: C. Topical subdivisions

Explanation: Topical subdivisions are used to narrow the focus of the concept expressed by the main heading to a specific subtopic.

80. How are primary topical subdivisions marked in the Library of Congress Subject Headings (LCSH)?

A. With a single dash
B. With a double dash
C. In italics
D. In parentheses

Answer: A. With a single dash

Explanation: Primary topical subdivisions are preceded by a single dash in LCSH.

81. How are secondary topical subdivisions, or subdivisions of subdivisions, marked in LCSH?

A. With a single dash
B. With a double dash
C. In bold letters
D. With an asterisk

Answer: B. With a double dash

Explanation: Secondary topical subdivisions are preceded by a double dash in LCSH.

82. Where can the rules for the application of topical subdivisions be found?

A. In the Library of Congress Index
B. In the Subject Headings Manual (2008)
C. In the weekly lists of additions
D. In the alphabetical listing of subdivisions

Answer: B. In the Subject Headings Manual (2008)

Explanation: The rules for the application of topical subdivisions are found in the Subject Headings Manual (2008).

83. How are subdivisions displayed when more than one is used under a heading in LCSH?

A. With a single long dash for each subdivision
B. With a single short dash for each subdivision
C. With two long dashes for each subdivision
D. With a double dash for each subdivision

Answer: C. With two long dashes for each subdivision

Explanation: When two subdivisions are used under a heading, they are displayed with two long dashes in LCSH.

84. What document provides general references for the application of subdivisions in LCSH?

A. Subject Cataloguing Manual
B. Weekly Lists
C. Subject Headings Manual
D. General Reference List

Answer: C. Subject Headings Manual

Explanation: General references for the application of subdivisions are printed under the generic headings in LCSH and are also detailed in the Subject Headings Manual.

85. What do form subdivisions indicate in a subject heading?

A. The geographic location of the material
B. The form in which the material is organized and presented
C. The time period covered by the material
D. The specific topic of the material

Answer: B. The form in which the material is organized and presented

Explanation: Form subdivisions are used to indicate the form in which the material on a subject is organized and presented and are added as the last element to any heading.

86. In what order does the form subdivision typically appear in a subject heading?

A. As the first element
B. As the last element
C. After the geographic subdivision
D. Before the topical subdivision

Answer: B. As the last element

Explanation: Form subdivisions usually appear as the last element in a subject heading, following the general pattern of subdivision order: Topic–Place–Time–Form.

87. What does the code "(May Subd Geog)" indicate for a heading in the LCSH?

A. The heading cannot be subdivided geographically
B. Place names may be added to the heading
C. The heading is restricted to specific geographic regions
D. The heading includes both geographic and topical subdivisions

Answer: B. Place names may be added to the heading

Explanation: The code "(May Subd Geog)" indicates that place names may be added to the heading if needed.

88. Where should a geographic subdivision be placed if it appears with topical or form subdivisions in a subject heading?

A. At the beginning of the heading
B. After the form subdivision
C. Before the topical subdivision
D. In any position, depending on the elements

Answer: D. In any position, depending on the elements

Explanation: The location of the geographic subdivision depends on which elements can be subdivided by place.

89. What is the purpose of scope notes in the context of subject headings?

A. To list synonyms for the term
B. To explain and clarify the definition and application of the term
C. To provide a list of related topics
D. To indicate the preferred term for use

Answer: B. To explain and clarify the definition and application of the term

Explanation: Scope notes clarify what is meant by the subject heading, specify its range of application, and draw distinctions between related terms.

90. What does the reference code "USE" indicate?

A. The term should be used instead of another
B. The term should not be used
C. The term is broader than the current term
D. The term is related to the current term

Answer: A. The term should be used instead of another

Explanation: The reference code "USE" directs users to use the specified heading instead of another one.

91. What does the reference code "UF" stand for?

A. Use For (do not use this heading)
B. User Friendly (recommended heading)
C. Universal Format (for broader terms)
D. Uniformity For (related terms)

Answer: A. Used For (do not use this heading)

Explanation: The reference code "UF" stands for "Used For" and indicates terms that should not be used and directs users to the preferred heading.

92. How is a term labeled when it is more specific in a subject heading?

A. BT (Broader Topic)
B. NT (Narrower Topic)
C. RT (Related Topic)
D. SA (See Also)

Answer: B. NT (Narrower Topic)

Explanation: The reference code "NT" indicates that the term is narrower or more specific than the broader term.

93. What does the reference code "SA" represent?

A. See Also (additional terms)
B. Specific Application (related terms)
C. Synonym Applied (preferred term)
D. Subject Alternative (similar terms)

Answer: A. See Also (additional terms)

Explanation: The reference code "SA" stands for "See Also" and is used to refer to additional terms related to the main heading.

94. What does the code "UF" denote in the context of LCSH?

A. A preferred heading
B. A non-preferred heading
C. A broader topic
D. A narrower topic

Answer: B. A non-preferred heading

Explanation: The code "UF" denotes non-preferred headings, indicating terms that should not be used and are linked to the preferred term.

95. How do the codes "USE" and "UF" function in the LCSH?

A. As hierarchical relationships
B. As associative relationships
C. As reciprocal references
D. As general references

Answer: C. As reciprocal references

Explanation: The codes "USE" and "UF" function as reciprocal references, guiding users between preferred and non-preferred terms.

96. What does the code "BT" represent in hierarchical relationships?

A. Broader Topic
B. Broader Term
C. Basic Term
D. Bibliographic Term

Answer: A. Broader Topic

Explanation: The code "BT" stands for "Broader Topic" and indicates a term that is more general than the heading in question.

97. What does the code "NT" signify in hierarchical relationships?

A. Narrower Term
B. New Topic
C. Non-Topical
D. Non-Term

Answer: A. Narrower Term

Explanation: The code "NT" denotes "Narrower Term" and signifies a term that is more specific than the heading.

98. How can "BT" and "NT" references be translated in a catalogue?

A. As "see also form" and "see also" references
B. As "see" and "see" references
C. As "see also" and "see" references
D. As "use" and "used for" references

Answer: A. As "see also form" and "see also" references

Explanation: "BT" (Broader Topic) and "NT" (Narrower Topic) can be translated into "see also form" and "see also" references respectively in a catalogue.

99. What does the code "RT" represent in associative relationships?

A. Related Term
B. Reversed Term
C. Reference Term
D. Recurring Term

Answer: A. Related Term

Explanation: The code "RT" stands for "Related Term" and links two headings that are associated in a manner other than hierarchical or equivalence.

100. How are "RT" references used in a thesaurus?

A. They link headings in a hierarchical sense
B. They indicate non-preferred headings
C. They link headings that are associated in some manner
D. They show broader or narrower relationships

Answer: C. They link headings that are associated in some manner

Explanation: "RT" (Related Term) references link headings that are associated with each other in some manner other than hierarchical or equivalence.

101. How are subject headings arranged in the Library of Congress Subject Headings (LCSH)?

A. By numerical value
B. Alphabetically, word by word
C. By date of publication
D. By author's last name

Answer: B. Alphabetically, word by word

Explanation: LCSH arranges subject headings alphabetically, word by word, with numbers preceding alphabetic characters and various qualifiers filing in a specified order.

102. In LCSH filing order, how are numbers treated in relation to alphabetic characters?

A. Numbers follow alphabetic characters
B. Numbers precede alphabetic characters
C. Numbers are treated as alphabetic characters
D. Numbers are ignored in the filing order

Answer: B. Numbers precede alphabetic characters

Explanation: Numbers, both Arabic and Roman, precede alphabetic characters in the order of increasing numeric value in LCSH.

103. How are abbreviations, acronyms, and initials filed in LCSH?

A. As separate words
B. As single whole words
C. By their expanded forms
D. By their alphabetical position

Answer: B. As single whole words

Explanation: Abbreviations, acronyms, and initials without interior punctuation file as single whole words in LCSH.

104. What is the filing order for subdivisions identified by dashes in LCSH?

A. After inverted qualifiers
B. Before inverted qualifiers
C. After qualifiers in parentheses
D. After phrases starting with the primary term

Answer: B. Before inverted qualifiers

Explanation: Subdivisions identified by dashes file ahead of inverted qualifiers in LCSH.

105. What is the Sears List of Subject Headings (SLSH)?

A. An expanded version of LCSH
B. A simplified version of LCSH
C. A version of LCSH used exclusively in academic libraries
D. A historical list no longer in use

Answer: B. A simplified version of LCSH

Explanation: SLSH is an abridged version of LCSH, designed to meet the needs of small and medium-sized libraries, and was compiled by Minnie Earl Sears.

106. What is the purpose of the Sears List of Subject Headings (SLSH)?

A. To provide a detailed list for large academic libraries
B. To offer an abridged list for small and medium-sized libraries
C. To replace the Library of Congress Subject Headings entirely
D. To provide historical context for subject cataloguing

Answer: B. To offer an abridged list for small and medium-sized libraries

Explanation: The SLSH was compiled in response to the demand for a more manageable list of subject headings suitable for small and medium-sized libraries.

107. What significant reform was introduced in the fifteenth edition of the Sears List of Subject Headings (SLSH)?

A. Introduction of a digital format
B. Use of standard abbreviations for relationships
C. Replacement of the index with a thesaurus
D. Expansion of subject headings to include more fields

Answer: B. Use of standard abbreviations for relationships

Explanation: The fifteenth edition of SLSH introduced standard abbreviations (NT, BT, RT, UF, USE, and SA) for displaying headings and their relationships, replacing the previous confusing symbols.

108. How does the Sears List of Subject Headings (SLSH) conform to modern standards?

A. It adheres to the ISO/IEC standards
B. It conforms to ANSI/NISO Standards for Thesaurus (1993)
C. It follows the Dublin Core Metadata Initiative standards
D. It aligns with the Dewey Decimal Classification system

Answer: B. It conforms to ANSI/NISO Standards for Thesaurus (1993)

Explanation: The SLSH thesaurus format conforms to the ANSI/NISO Standards for Thesaurus (1993), ensuring modern and standardized terminology.

109. Despite its reforms, what limitation does the Sears List of Subject Headings (SLSH) still have?

A. It is not used outside the USA
B. It is not a true thesaurus
C. It lacks modern terminology
D. It is only available in print format

Answer: B. It is not a true thesaurus

Explanation: Although reformed, the SLSH remains an index for pre-coordinated indexing rather than a true thesaurus.

110. What is the typical format of subject headings in the Sears List of Subject Headings (SLSH)?

A. Single words and complex descriptive phrases
B. Only single words
C. Only complex and compound subjects
D. Only simple phrases

Answer: A. Single words and complex descriptive phrases

Explanation: Subject headings in the SLSH include a range of formats, from single words to complex descriptive phrases of single concepts and compound subjects.

111. What general principles guide the formation of subject headings in the Sears List of Subject Headings (SLSH)?

A. "Alphabetical Order", "Comprehensive Coverage", "International Standards"
B. "Specific and Direct Entry", "Common Usage", "Uniformity"
C. "Simplified Terminology", "Global Scope", "Historical Accuracy"
D. "Broad Coverage", "Flexible Structure", "User Preferences"

Answer: B. "Specific and Direct Entry", "Common Usage", "Uniformity"

Explanation: The SLSH is guided by the principles of "Specific and Direct Entry," "Common Usage," and "Uniformity" in the formation of its subject headings.

112. What is the purpose of subject subdivisions in the Sears List of Subject Headings (SLSH)?

A. To provide a comprehensive history of all subjects
B. To subdivide broad topics or those with extensive literature
C. To list all possible subjects in alphabetical order
D. To organize subjects by their publication date

Answer: B. To subdivide broad topics or those with extensive literature

Explanation: Subject subdivisions are used to break down broad or extensively written topics into more specific aspects or points of view.

113. Which subdivision type indicates the physical form of the document?

A. Topical Subdivision
B. Geographic Subdivision
C. Chronological Subdivision
D. Form Subdivision

Answer: D. Form Subdivision

Explanation: Form subdivisions are used to denote the physical format or presentation of the material, such as "—Bibliography".

114. What is a key heading in the Sears List of Subject Headings (SLSH)?

A. A broad topic with no specific subdivisions
B. A heading used as a pattern for subdivisions across similar topics
C. A term used only in alphabetical lists
D. A unique subject heading with no subdivisions

Answer: B. A heading used as a pattern for subdivisions across similar topics

Explanation: Key headings in SLSH, like those in LCSH, serve as models for how subdivisions should be used with other similar headings.

115. How are chronological subdivisions used in the Sears List of Subject Headings (SLSH)?

A. To specify the geographical location of a topic
B. To denote specific time periods relevant to the

main topic
C. To describe the physical form of the document
D. To identify different languages used in the document

Answer: B. To denote specific time periods relevant to the main topic

Explanation: Chronological subdivisions define specific time periods for the primary topic, such as "Europe—History—1789-1900".

116. Which of the following is an example of a geographic subdivision in the Sears List of Subject Headings (SLSH)?

A. Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616
B. Oceanography—Research
C. Geology—Bolivia
D. United States—History—1861-1865, Civil War

Answer: C. Geology—Bolivia

Explanation: Geographic subdivisions provide a geographic aspect of a broad subject, such as "Geology—Bolivia".

117. What do parenthetical instructions in the Sears List of Subject Headings (SLSH) indicate?

A. How to combine headings with other subjects
B. Which headings may be subdivided by geographic location
C. The chronological order of subject headings
D. The preferred format for printing subject headings

Answer: B. Which headings may be subdivided by geographic location

Explanation: Parenthetical instructions indicate which headings can be further subdivided by geographic location, such as "Folklore (May subdiv. Geog.)".

118. How are references organized in the Sears List of Subject Headings (SLSH)?

A. By author, title, and subject
B. By geographic location, form, and time period
C. Into specific See references, specific See also references, and general references
D. By publication date and language

Answer: C. Into specific See references, specific See also references, and general references

Explanation: References in the SLSH are categorized into specific See references, specific See also references, and general references.

119. What change was made in the fifteenth edition of the Sears List of Subject Headings (SLSH) regarding references?

A. "See" and "See also" references were replaced by numerical codes
B. Thesaurus symbols UF/USE, BT, NT, RT, and SA replaced "See" and "See also" references
C. Alphabetical listing was introduced instead of hierarchical arrangement
D. Subject headings were divided by geographic location and form

Answer: B. Thesaurus symbols UF/USE, BT, NT, RT, and SA replaced "See" and "See also" references

Explanation: In the fifteenth edition of SLSH, "See" and "See also" references were replaced by thesaurus symbols UF/USE, BT, NT, RT, and SA.

More info: References in the SLSH are grouped into three main categories: specific See references, specific See also references, and general references. With the fifteenth edition of SLSH in 1994 See and "See also" references and the complementary "x" and "xx" were replaced by the thesaurus symbols UF/USE, BT, NT, RT and SA

120. What filing rules does the Sears List of Subject Headings (SLSH) follow for organizing entries?

A. Dewey Decimal Classification
B. Library of Congress Filing Rules
C. ALA Filing Rules (1980)
D. Universal Decimal Classification

Answer: C. ALA Filing Rules (1980)

Explanation: The filing of entries in the Sears List of Subject Headings (SLSH) follows the ALA Filing Rules (1980).

BLI 223 BLOCK 3 UNIT 11 INDEXING TECHNIQUES

1. What is derived indexing also known as?

A. Concept indexing
B. Extractive indexing
C. Assigned indexing
D. Keyword indexing

Answer: B. Extractive indexing

Explanation: Derived indexing is also known as extractive indexing. It involves extracting terms directly from the title and/or text of a document to represent its subject(s).

2. What characterizes derivative indexing?

A. It involves using an indexer's own knowledge of the subject.
B. It derives terms directly from the document itself without external guides.
C. It uses controlled vocabulary for selecting terms.
D. It requires intellectual effort on the part of the indexer.

Answer: B. It derives terms directly from the document itself without external guides.

Explanation: In derivative indexing, terms are derived directly from the document itself, using information that is manifest in the document, with minimal intellectual effort from the indexer.

3. What is assigned indexing also known as?

A. Extractive indexing
B. Automatic indexing
C. Concept indexing
D. Keyword indexing

Answer: C. Concept indexing

Explanation: Assigned indexing is also known as concept indexing because it involves identifying concepts associated with the content of a document and selecting subject headings or descriptors from a controlled vocabulary.

4. Which of the following is an example of derivative indexing?

A. Chain indexing
B. PRECIS
C. Citation indexing
D. POPSI

Answer: C. Citation indexing

Explanation: Citation indexing is an example of derivative indexing, as it involves extracting information based on references and citations within the document.

5. Which indexing method involves selecting terms from a list of controlled vocabulary?

A. Derived indexing
B. Automatic indexing
C. Assigned indexing
D. Keyword indexing

Answer: C. Assigned indexing

Explanation: Assigned indexing involves selecting terms or descriptors from a controlled vocabulary to represent the subject(s) of a document.

6. What is a pre-coordinate indexing system characterized by?

A. Assigning terms to documents without considering their relationship
B. Coordinating component terms at the input stage of indexing
C. Using a controlled vocabulary for assigning terms
D. Combining concepts at the output stage

Answer: B. Coordinating component terms at the input stage of indexing

Explanation: A pre-coordinate indexing system involves coordinating component terms representing compounds at the input stage, i.e., at the time of indexing, in anticipation of users' approaches.

7. Which of the following indexing models is considered a pre-coordinate indexing language?

A. Chain indexing
B. PRECIS
C. Library of Congress Subject Headings
D. POPSI

Answer: C. Library of Congress Subject Headings

Explanation: The Library of Congress Subject Headings (LCSH) is an example of a pre-coordinate indexing language, as it involves coordinating terms at the time of indexing.

8. Who first set forth the rules for alphabetical subject headings systematically?

A. Andrea Crestadoro
B. Minnie Earl Sears
C. Charles Ammi Cutter
D. C.A. Cutter

Answer: C. Charles Ammi Cutter

Explanation: Charles Ammi Cutter systematically set forth the rules for alphabetical subject headings in his "Rules for a Printed Dictionary Catalog" in 1876.

9. According to Cutter's rules, how should the biography of a person be indexed?

A. Under the person's name
B. Under the country associated with the person
C. Under the event related to the person
D. Under a generic subject heading

Answer: A. Under the person's name

Explanation: According to Cutter's rules, a personal biography should be indexed under the person's name.

10. How should an event be indexed if it is a proper noun according to Cutter's guidelines?

A. Under the event's name
B. Under the country where the event occurred
C. Under the subject related to the event
D. Under the associated organization

Answer: A. Under the event's name

Explanation: An event that is a proper noun should be indexed under the event's name, such as "Jalian Wala Bagh."

11. How should scientific subjects be indexed according to Cutter's rules?

A. Under the scientific subject with no geographical qualifier
B. Under the subject with a geographical qualifier
C. Under the country where the research was conducted
D. Under the general category of science

Answer: B. Under the subject with a geographical qualifier

Explanation: In scientific subjects, the entry should be under the subject qualified by place, e.g., "Oceanography—India."

More info: Some specific rules/guidelines as furnished by Cutter in his Rules for a Printed Dictionary Catalog are mentioned below: 1) Person versus Country Entry will be under person in case of single / personal biography. Entry will be under country in case of history, event, etc. For example, the biography of Sachin Tendulkar would entered under his name whereas the biography of Indira Gandhi would be entered her name and India-history also. 2) Country versus Event Entry of an event would be under event if it is proper noun, e.g. Jalian Wala Bagh. Entry would be under country if it is common noun. e.g. Freedom fighters in India, entry would be under India. 3) Subject versus Country In scientific subjects, entry will be under subject qualified by place. e.g. Oceanography, India. It has been stipulated to prepare entry under the name of place qualified by the subject in subject areas like History, Government and Commerce, e.g. India—Moghul Period.

Source: IGNOU BLIS book

12. What is the primary focus of Kaiser's Systematic Indexing according to his definition?

A. Indexing documents
B. Indexing information
C. Indexing authors
D. Indexing titles

Answer: B. Indexing information

Explanation: Kaiser's Systematic Indexing emphasizes indexing information, which includes various 'facts and opinions' encoded in the texts

of documents, rather than indexing the documents themselves.

13. According to Kaiser, what are the two fundamental categories of facets in systematic indexing?

A. Concepts and Processes
B. Concretes and Processes
C. Topics and Subtopics
D. Actions and Results

Answer: B. Concretes and Processes

Explanation: Kaiser categorized facets into "Concretes" (things, places, and abstract terms) and "Processes" (actions or processes described in the document).

14. What does the term 'Concrete' refer to in Kaiser's Systematic Indexing?

A. Actions and processes described in the document
B. The mode of treatment of the subject by the author
C. Things, places, and abstract terms not signifying any action
D. Adjectives related to the concrete as a component of the subject

Answer: C. Things, places, and abstract terms not signifying any action

Explanation: In Kaiser's Systematic Indexing, 'Concrete' refers to things, places, and abstract terms that do not signify any action or process.

15. What does the term 'Process' refer to in Kaiser's Systematic Indexing?

A. Things, places, and abstract terms
B. Mode of treatment of the subject by the author or an action described in the document
C. The physical format of the document
D. The historical context of the document

Answer: B. Mode of treatment of the subject by the author or an action described in the document

Explanation: 'Process' refers to the mode of treatment of the subject by the author, an action or process described in the document, or an adjective related to the concrete as a component of the subject.

16. What rule did Kaiser lay down regarding indexing a subject dealing with place?

A. Only a single entry should be made
B. Entries should be made under the subject and place separately
C. Double entry should be made (e.g., 'Concrete—Place—Process' and 'Place—Concrete—Process')
D. Place should be omitted in the indexing

Answer: C. Double entry should be made (e.g., 'Concrete—Place—Process' and 'Place—Concrete—Process')

Explanation: Kaiser's rule for indexing a subject dealing with place involves making double entries: 'Concrete—Place—Process' and 'Place—Concrete—Process'.

Documents	Categories	Subject Headings
Indexing of films	Concrete—Process	Films—Indexing
Strike in India	Country—Process	India—Strike
Libraries in Nepal	Concrete—Country	Libraries—Nepal
Manufacturing of copper in Assam	Concrete—Country—Process	Copper—Manufacturing—Assam

Source: IGNOU BLIS book

17. What is the primary purpose of Ranganathan's Chain Indexing method?

A. To replicate the hierarchical structure of classification
B. To provide a supplementary tool for classification schemes
C. To replace the need for classification schemes
D. To create a new classification system

Answer: B. To provide a supplementary tool for classification schemes

Explanation: Chain indexing is intended as a supplementary tool to classification schemes, helping to access terms without replicating the hierarchical structure.

18. How does chain indexing derive subject headings according to Ranganathan?

A. By directly indexing each document separately
B. By deriving headings from a chain of successive subdivisions from general to specific
C. By using random selection of terms
D. By creating new terms unrelated to existing classifications

Answer: B. By deriving headings from a chain of successive subdivisions from general to specific

Explanation: Chain indexing involves deriving subject headings from a chain of successive subdivisions, moving from general to specific levels.

19. What does Ranganathan describe as the chain indexing procedure in his definition?

A. A method for mechanical class number assignment
B. A method for creating hierarchical classifications
C. A procedure for deriving class index entries mechanically
D. A system for alphabetizing index terms

Answer: C. A procedure for deriving class index entries mechanically

Explanation: Ranganathan defines chain indexing as a procedure for deriving class index entries from a class number in a mechanical way.

20. Where was chain indexing used before it was replaced by PRECIS-indexing?

A. In the Library of Congress Subject Headings
B. In the British National Bibliography
C. In the Sears List of Subject Headings
D. In the American Library Association catalogs

Answer: B. In the British National Bibliography

Explanation: Chain indexing was used in the British National Bibliography (BNB) during the 1950s and 1960s before being replaced by PRECIS-indexing.

21. What does the term 'chain' refer to in the context of chain indexing?

A. A linear sequence of unrelated terms
B. A structural manifestation of a subject with a modulated sequence of sub-classes
C. A random collection of index terms
D. A list of keywords without specific order

Answer: B. A structural manifestation of a subject with a modulated sequence of sub-classes

Explanation: In chain indexing, a 'chain' refers to a structural representation of a subject, consisting of a modulated sequence of sub-classes or isolated ideas.

22. How does chain indexing use the class number of a document?

A. To determine the length of the index
B. To derive subject headings for both specific entries and reference entries
C. To organize documents alphabetically
D. To create new classification schemes

Answer: B. To derive subject headings for both specific entries and reference entries

Explanation: Chain indexing uses the class number of the document to derive subject headings, both for specific subject entries and for subject reference entries.

23. What is the purpose of 'Sought Links' (SL) in chain indexing?

A. To denote concepts that are unlikely to be used by the user
B. To represent connecting symbols or indicator digits
C. To indicate concepts likely to be used as access points by the user
D. To fill gaps in the classification scheme

Answer: C. To indicate concepts likely to be used as access points by the user

Explanation: Sought Links (SL) are concepts in the chain that are likely to be used by the user as access points.

24. What are 'Unsought Links' (USL) in chain indexing?

A. Concepts that are likely to be used as access points
B. Concepts that are not likely to be used as access points
C. Connecting symbols or indicator digits
D. Concepts inserted by the indexer to fill gaps

Answer: B. Concepts that are not likely to be used as access points

Explanation: Unsought Links (USL) are concepts that are not likely to be used as access points by the user.

25. What are 'False Links' (FL) in chain indexing?

A. Valid concepts representing key subject ideas
B. Connecting symbols or indicator digits that do not represent valid concepts
C. Missing concepts that need to be inserted manually
D. Concepts that are likely to be used as access points

Answer: B. Connecting symbols or indicator digits that do not represent valid concepts

Explanation: False Links (FL) are connecting symbols or indicator digits that do not represent valid concepts in the chain.

26. What are 'Missing Links' (ML) in chain indexing?

A. Concepts that are inserted manually to fill gaps in the classification scheme
B. Concepts that are likely to be used as access points
C. Concepts that are not likely to be used as access points
D. Connecting symbols or indicator digits

Answer: A. Concepts that are inserted manually to fill gaps in the classification scheme

Explanation: Missing Links (ML) are concepts not available in the classification scheme but are inserted by the indexer to fill gaps in the chain.

27. What is the first step in chain indexing?

A. Determination of Links
B. Preparation of Specific Subject Heading
C. Construction of the Class Number of the Subject of the Document
D. Preparation of Cross References

Answer: C. Construction of the Class Number of the Subject of the Document

Explanation: The first step in chain indexing is to classify the subject of the document by following a preferred classification scheme and constructing the class number.

28. How should the class number be represented in chain indexing?

A. As a list of keywords
B. In the form of a chain with each link consisting of a class number and its verbal translation
C. As a random sequence of terms
D. Using a simplified notation system

Answer: B. In the form of a chain with each link consisting of a class number and its verbal translation

Explanation: The class number should be represented as a chain where each link includes both the class number and its verbal translation in standard terms or phrases.

29. What types of links are determined in chain indexing?

A. Direct Links and Indirect Links
B. Primary Links and Secondary Links
C. Sought Links (SL), Unsought Links (USL), False Links (FL), and Missing Links (ML)
D. Valid Links and Invalid Links

Answer: C. Sought Links (SL), Unsought Links (USL), False Links (FL), and Missing Links (ML)

Explanation: Different types of links in chain indexing include Sought Links (SL), Unsought Links (USL), False Links (FL), and Missing Links (ML).

30. How is the specific subject heading prepared in chain indexing?

A. By deriving it from the first sought link and moving forward
B. By deriving it from the last sought link and moving upwards
C. By using only the class number without considering links
D. By randomly selecting terms from the chain

Answer: B. By deriving it from the last sought link and moving upwards

Explanation: Specific subject headings are derived from the last sought link and moving upwards, taking necessary and sufficient sought links in a reverse rendering process.

31. What is the purpose of preparing subject reference headings in chain indexing?

A. To list all possible links and their types
B. To derive subject reference headings from upper sought links until all terms are exhausted
C. To classify documents into various categories
D. To create a simplified version of the classification scheme

Answer: B. To derive subject reference headings from upper sought links until all terms are exhausted

Explanation: Subject reference headings are derived from each upper sought link and continue until all terms of upper sought links are exhausted.

32. What is done in the preparation of subject reference entries?

A. Prepare entries based on random selection of terms
B. Prepare 'see also' references from each subject reference heading to its specific subject heading
C. Create new subject headings from scratch
D. Arrange the subject headings alphabetically

Answer: B. Prepare 'see also' references from each subject reference heading to its specific subject heading

Explanation: Subject reference entries or 'see also' references are prepared from each subject reference heading to its specific subject heading.

33. What should be done with cross references in chain indexing?

A. Ignore them
B. Prepare cross references ('see' references) for each alternative and synonymous term/heading
C. Remove them from the indexing
D. Combine them with specific subject headings

Answer: B. Prepare cross references ('see' references) for each alternative and synonymous term/heading

Explanation: Cross references ('see' references) should be prepared for each alternative and synonymous term/heading used in the specific and subject reference headings.

34. What is the final step in chain indexing?

A. Preparation of Cross References
B. Alphabetization
C. Preparation of Specific Subject Heading
D. Determination of Links

Answer: B. Alphabetization

Explanation: The final step in chain indexing is to merge specific subject entries, subject references, and 'see' references, and arrange them in a single alphabetical sequence.

More info : Steps in Chain Indexing The following steps are to be followed in chain indexing for deriving different types of subject headings: 1) Construction of the Class Number of the Subject of the Document Classify the subject of the document by following a preferred classification scheme. A class number constructed according to a scheme for notational classification will form the basis for applying the rules for chain procedure for deriving subject headings. 2) Representation of the Class Number in the form of a Chain Represent the class number in the form of a chain in which each link consists of two parts: class number and its verbal translation in standard term or phrase used in the preferred classification scheme. 3) Determination of Links Determine different kinds of links: Sought Links (SL), Unsought Links (USL), False Links (FL), and Missing Links (ML). 4) Preparation of Specific Subject Heading Derive specific subject heading for the specific subject entry from the last

sought link and moving upwards by taking the necessary and sufficient sought links in a reverse rendering or backward rendering process. If the subject includes a space isolate, time isolate or a form isolate, break the chain into different part(s) at the point(s) denoting space, time and form in the class number. In such a situation, specific subject heading is to be derived from last SL of first part in reverse rendering process and then by second part, third part, etc., if any, in the similar process. Then, the components of derived subject headings are to be arranged in the sequence of their derivation from each part of the chain of the class number. 5) Preparation of Subject Reference Headings Derive subject reference heading for the subject reference from each of the upper sought links. This process continues until all the terms of upper sought links are exhausted and indexed. 6) Preparation of Subject Reference Entries Prepare subject reference entries or 'see also' references from each subject reference heading to its specific subject heading. When a subject heading starts from last sought link denoting space or time or form, prepare 'See' references instead of 'See also' references from subject reference heading(s) to specific subject heading. 7) Preparation of Cross References, if any Prepare cross references (i.e. 'see' references) for each alternative and synonymous term/heading used in the specific as well as subject reference headings. 8 5 8) Alphabetization Merge specific subject entries, subject references (i.e. 'see also' references) and 'see' references and arrange them in single alphabetical sequence.

Source: IGNOU BLIS book

35. What is a major advantage of chain indexing?

A. It provides no specific information
B. It ensures the collocation of aspects of a subject distributed in the classification scheme
C. It is highly dependent on manual indexing only
D. It offers general information only

Answer: B. It ensures the collocation of aspects of a subject distributed in the classification scheme

Explanation: Chain indexing ensures that aspects of a subject scattered throughout the classification scheme are brought together, with the last link in the class number always being the first link in the chain of subject index entries.

36. How does chain indexing benefit information seekers?

A. By providing general information only
B. By deriving subject headings from the chain of successive subdivisions from the general to the most specific level
C. By offering only general headings
D. By focusing solely on specific entries

Answer: B. By deriving subject headings from the chain of successive subdivisions from the general to the most specific level

Explanation: Chain indexing offers both general and specific information to all seekers by deriving subject headings from a chain of successive subdivisions leading from the general to the most specific level.

37. Which of the following is a criticism of chain indexing?

A. It always ensures perfect specificity
B. It provides easy access to all entries without any issues
C. It has too much dependency on classification schemes
D. It is highly suitable for computerization

Answer: C. It has too much dependency on classification schemes

Explanation: Chain indexing is criticized for its heavy reliance on classification schemes. If the classification scheme is structurally defective, the subject headings derived will also be defective.

38. What is a problem associated with the disappearance of the chain in chain indexing?

A. Improved context of the content
B. Loss of full context of the content of the document
C. Enhanced specificity of entries
D. Better mechanical system efficiency

Answer: B. Loss of full context of the content of the document

Explanation: The disappearance of the chain at each stage of deriving subject reference entries results in a loss of the full context of the document's content.

39. What is the limitation of chain indexing concerning specificity?

A. It provides multiple specific entries
B. It lacks any specific entries
C. It provides only one specific entry with others being subject references
D. It offers many subject references with no specific entry

Answer: C. It provides only one specific entry with others being subject references

Explanation: Chain indexing is limited by providing only one specific entry, while other entries are subject references.

40. Why is chain indexing considered unsuitable for computerization?

A. It is based on easily manageable operations
B. The formation of the chain involves complex human intellectual operations that computers cannot handle
C. It is a highly automated process
D. It requires minimal human intervention

Answer: B. The formation of the chain involves complex human intellectual operations that computers cannot handle

Explanation: Chain indexing involves complex human intellectual operations, which are beyond the current capabilities of computers to manipulate.

41. What issue arises with accessing specific subject headings in chain indexing?

A. It provides direct access to all entries
B. It makes direct access possible only for those who know the specific subject heading
C. It eliminates the need for cross-references
D. It simplifies the process without any need for specific entries

Answer: B. It makes direct access possible only for those who know the specific subject heading

Explanation: Chain indexing can make direct access to specific subject headings possible only for those who already know the specific heading, while others may need to navigate through cross-references.

42. What is PRECIS known for in the field of indexing?

A. It is a modernized version of chain indexing
B. It is considered one of the most ambitious attempts to create a new indexing system
C. It was developed for library automation systems
D. It primarily uses manual indexing techniques

Answer: B. It is considered one of the most ambitious attempts to create a new indexing system

Explanation: PRECIS is recognized as one of the most ambitious attempts in the late twentieth century to create a new indexing system from scratch.

43. Who developed the PRECIS indexing system?

A. Charles Ammi Cutter
B. Julius Otto Kaiser
C. Derek Austin and the Classification Research Group (CRG)
D. S. Ranganathan

Answer: C. Derek Austin and the Classification Research Group (CRG)

Explanation: PRECIS was developed by Derek Austin and the Classification Research Group (CRG) in the early 1970s.

44. Why was PRECIS introduced to replace chain indexing in the British National Bibliography (BNB)?

A. Chain indexing was not suitable for manual systems
B. Chain indexing was ideal for computerization
C. Chain indexing was not ideal for a computerized system

D. PRECIS was more cost-effective than chain indexing

Answer: C. Chain indexing was not ideal for a computerized system

Explanation: Chain indexing was replaced by PRECIS because it was not well-suited for computerized systems, which were being developed and implemented for the BNB.

45. What does the Principle of Context Dependency in PRECIS entail?

A. Each term in a string is independent of other terms
B. Each term's meaning depends on its following term
C. Each term is qualified and sets the next term into its wider context
D. Terms are organized randomly without context

Answer: C. Each term is qualified and sets the next term into its wider context

Explanation: The Principle of Context Dependency in PRECIS means that each term's meaning depends on the preceding terms, collectively representing a single context.

46. What is the Principle of One-to-One Relationship in PRECIS?

A. Each term in a string is unrelated to the next term
B. Terms are organized without any sequence
C. Each term in the string is directly related to its next term
D. Terms form a non-linear, unstructured sequence

Answer: C. Each term in the string is directly related to its next term

Explanation: The Principle of One-to-One Relationship ensures that each term in the PRECIS string is directly related to the next term in a sequence.

47. What is the primary difference in entry structure between PRECIS and traditional indexing systems?

A. PRECIS uses a single-line entry structure, while traditional systems use a two-line structure
B. PRECIS employs a two-dimensional display with a two-line-three-part entry structure
C. Traditional systems use a two-dimensional display, while PRECIS uses a one-dimensional structure
D. Both systems use the same one-dimensional display

Answer: B. PRECIS employs a two-dimensional display with a two-line-three-part entry structure

Explanation: Unlike traditional systems, PRECIS uses a two-dimensional display with a two-line-three-part entry structure to represent relationships more effectively.

48. In the entry structure of PRECIS, what does the Lead position represent?

A. The term that provides additional context
B. The term that sets the lead into a narrower context
C. The approach term, which is the filing word and user's access point
D. Additional qualifying terms relying on the heading

Answer: C. The approach term, which is the filing word and user's access point

Explanation: In PRECIS, the Lead position is occupied by the approach term, which serves as the filing word and user's access point.

49. What is the purpose of the Qualifier position in the PRECIS entry structure?

A. To provide additional qualifying terms for the display
B. To offer the filing word for user access
C. To set the Lead term into a wider context, from general to specific
D. To indicate an empty space when the Lead term is the first term

Answer: C. To set the Lead term into a wider context, from general to specific

Explanation: The Qualifier position is used to set the Lead term into a wider context, establishing a general-to-specific relationship.

50. When does the Display position become empty in the PRECIS entry structure?

A. When the Lead term appears in the Qualifier position
B. When the Display position contains additional qualifying terms
C. When the last term of the input string appears in the Lead position
D. When the first term of the input string is in the Display position

Answer: C. When the last term of the input string appears in the Lead position

Explanation: The Display position becomes empty when the last term of the input string is in the Lead position, as there are no additional qualifying terms to display.

51. In the context of PRECIS indexing, what is the role of the "Location" operator?

A. It indicates the performer of an action
B. It refers to the form of a document
C. It represents the thing towards which an action is directed
D. It identifies the action or effect of the action

Answer: C. It represents the thing towards which an action is directed

Explanation: The "Location" operator refers to the thing towards which an action is directed, such as the object of a transitive action or the performer of an intransitive action.

52. What does the "Core Concepts" category include in PRECIS indexing?

A. Form of document and target user
B. Selected instance, study region, and sample population
C. Thing when action is not present, action, and effect of action
D. Viewpoint-as-form and selected instance

Answer: C. Thing when action is not present, action, and effect of action

Explanation: The "Core Concepts" category includes concepts like the thing when action is not present, action itself, and the effect of the action.

53. Which operator in the PRECIS system is used to denote a performer of transitive action or an agent?

A. Location
B. Core Concepts
C. Performer
D. Viewpoint-as-form

Answer: C. Performer

Explanation: The "Performer" operator denotes the performer of transitive action, including agents and instruments.

54. What does the "Extra-Core Concepts" category in PRECIS indexing cover?

A. Form of document and target user
B. Selected instance and sample population
C. Study region and study example
D. Viewpoint-as-form and selected instance

Answer: A. Form of document and target user

Explanation: The "Extra-Core Concepts" category includes concepts like the form of the document and the target user.

55. In PRECIS indexing, what does "Viewpoint-as-form" refer to?

A. The location or object of an action
B. The form of the document and the target user
C. The study region or sample population
D. The selected instance or study example

Answer: B. The form of the document and the target user

Explanation: "Viewpoint-as-form" refers to the form of the document and the target user in PRECIS indexing.

Schema of Role Operators

Primary Operators		
Environment of core concepts	0	Location
Core concepts	1	Key System *Thing when action not present. Thing towards which an action is directed, e.g. object of transitive action, performer of intransitive action*
	2	Action; Effect of action
	3	Performer of transitive action (Agent, Instrument); Intake; Factor
Extra-core concepts	4	Viewpoint-as-form
	5	Selected Instance: study region, study example, sample population
	6	Form of document; Target user
Secondary Operations		
Co-ordinate concepts	f	'Bound' co-ordinate concept
	g	Standard co-ordinate concept
Dependent elements	p	Part; Property
	q	Member of quasi-generic group
	r	Assembly
Special classes of action	s	Roll definer; Directional property
	t	Author-attributed action
	u	Two-way interaction

Source: IGNOU BLIS book

56. What is the first step in subject indexing according to PRECIS when using a document title?

A. Preparation of Input String
B. Analysis
C. Generation of Index Entries
D. Generation of Supporting Reference Entries

Answer: B. Analysis

Explanation: The first step in subject indexing according to PRECIS is to analyze the title of the document to determine the relevant subject terms and concepts.

57. In the PRECIS system, what is involved in the preparation of the input string?

A. Generating supporting reference entries
B. Analyzing the document title
C. Formatting the index entries
D. Constructing the index entries based on analyzed concepts

Answer: D. Constructing the index entries based on analyzed concepts

Explanation: Preparation of the input string involves constructing the index entries based on the analysis of the document title and identified subject terms.

58. What is the purpose of generating supporting reference entries in PRECIS indexing?

A. To create a list of index terms
B. To provide additional context and references to related subjects
C. To format the index entries
D. To alphabetize the index entries

Answer: B. To provide additional context and references to related subjects

Explanation: Generating supporting reference entries provides additional context and references to related subjects, enhancing the accessibility of the indexed information.

59. How are index entries formatted in the standard format of PRECIS?

A. When primary operators (4) to (6) are present in the Lead
B. When secondary operators are used
C. When primary operators (0), (1), and (2) or their dependent elements are present in the Lead
D. When only predicate transformations are applied

Answer: C. When primary operators (0), (1), and (2) or their dependent elements are present in the Lead

Explanation: Index entries in the standard format are generated when primary operators (0), (1), and (2) or their dependent elements appear in the Lead position.

60. What triggers the use of the inverted format in PRECIS indexing?

A. The presence of primary operators (0), (1), and (2)
B. The use of predicate transformation
C. The presence of terms coded by operators in the range from (4) to (6)
D. The need for supporting reference entries

Answer: C. The presence of terms coded by operators in the range from (4) to (6)

Explanation: Index entries in the inverted format are generated whenever a term coded by an operator in the range from (4) to (6) or its dependent elements appear in the Lead position.

61. What is the primary focus of Postulate-based Permuted Subject Indexing (POPSI)?

A. To develop new classification schemes
B. To enhance subject indexing languages through logical interpretation
C. To create computer-based indexing systems
D. To standardize the use of prepositions in indexing

Answer: B. To enhance subject indexing languages through logical interpretation

Explanation: POPSI focuses on enhancing subject indexing languages through logical interpretation, following Ranganathan's General Theory of Library Classification.

62. How does Dr. Ganesh Bhattacharyya contribute to the development of POPSI?

A. By creating a new classification scheme
B. By explaining the fundamentals of subject indexing languages and developing a newer version of POPSI
C. By designing a computer-based indexing system
D. By standardizing indexing formats

Answer: B. By explaining the fundamentals of subject indexing languages and developing a newer version of POPSI

Explanation: Dr. Ganesh Bhattacharyya explained the fundamentals of subject indexing languages and developed a newer version of POPSI as part of his General Theory of Subject Indexing Languages (GT-SIL).

63. What is the role of apparatus words in POPSI?

A. To classify documents
B. To communicate the exact meaning of subject propositions and are ignored in alphabetization
C. To create a computer-based indexing system
D. To standardize index entry formats

Answer: B. To communicate the exact meaning of subject propositions and are ignored in alphabetization

Explanation: Apparatus words (such as prepositions and conjunctions) are used to communicate the exact meaning of subject propositions but are ignored during alphabetization in POPSI.

64. What does DS-SIL stand for in the context of POPSI?

A. Deep Structure of Subject Indexing Languages
B. Document Structure of Subject Indexing Languages
C. Detailed Structure of Subject Indexing Languages
D. Dynamic Structure of Subject Indexing Languages

Answer: A. Deep Structure of Subject Indexing Languages

Explanation: DS-SIL stands for Deep Structure of Subject Indexing Languages, which is the logical abstraction of the surface structures of various SILs.

65. According to the General Theory of SIL, how is a specific subject assumed to relate to the deep structure of SIL?

A. It is a part of a detailed document structure
B. It is a surface structure of the deep structure of SIL
C. It is a new classification scheme
D. It is a computer-generated index

Answer: B. It is a surface structure of the deep structure of SIL

Explanation: According to the General Theory of SIL, the structure of a specific subject is assumed to be a surface structure of the deep structure of SIL.

66. What are the two types of classification according to the General Theory of SIL?

A. Conceptual and Relational Classification
B. Hierarchical and Linear Classification
C. Organising Classification and Associative

Classification
D. Sequential and Functional Classification

Answer: C. Organising Classification and Associative Classification

Explanation: The General Theory of SIL describes classification as a combination of organising classification and associative classification.

67. What is the primary task in organising classification?

A. Creating a relative index
B. Categorizing concepts and organizing them in hierarchies
C. Identifying the inter-facet relationships
D. Associating subjects without reference to hierarchy

Answer: B. Categorizing concepts and organizing them in hierarchies

Explanation: The primary task in organising classification is the categorisation of concepts and their organisation in hierarchies.

68. What is the result of organising classification?

A. A relative index
B. A classification scheme based on associative relationships
C. A hierarchy
D. A chronological list

Answer: C. A hierarchy

Explanation: The result of organising classification is always a hierarchy, based on relationships such as genus-species and whole-part.

69. How does associative classification differ from organising classification?

A. It creates a hierarchy based on COSSCO relationships
B. It distinguishes subjects based on their association with other subjects
C. It organizes concepts into chronological order
D. It categorizes concepts based on functional relationships

Answer: B. It distinguishes subjects based on their association with other subjects

Explanation: Associative classification distinguishes subjects based on their association with other subjects, without reference to their COSSCO relationships.

70. What is the result of associative classification?

A. A hierarchical structure
B. A chronological list
C. A relative index
D. A detailed classification scheme

Answer: C. A relative index

Explanation: The result of associative classification is always a relative index, which reflects the association of subjects with each other.

More info: According to the General Theory of SIL, classification is a combination of both organising classification and associative classification. In other words, an indexing system is a combination of both organising classification and associative classification. The tasks 9 7 involved in creating an organising classification are the categorisation of concepts and their organising in hierarchies. In organising classification compound subjects are based on genus-species, whole-part, and other inter-facet relationships. Here, classification is used to distinguish and rank each subject from all other subjects with reference to its Coordinate—Superordinate—Subordinate—Collateral (COSSCO) relationships. The result of organising classification is always a hierarchy. In associative classification, a subject is distinguished from other subjects based on the reference of how it is associated with other subjects without reference to its COSSCO relationships. The result of associative classification is always a relative index.

71. What are the three main components of POPSI from an operational perspective?

A. Analysis, Formalisation, and Standardisation
B. Analysis, Synthesis, and Permutation
C. Content Analysis, Modulation, and Alphabetisation

D. Standardisation, Modulation, and Entry Preparation

Answer: B. Analysis, Synthesis, and Permutation

Explanation: The salient features of POPSI are grouped under Analysis, Synthesis, and Permutation.

72. What is the first step in applying POPSI?

A. Formalisation
B. Standardisation
C. Content Analysis
D. Modulation

Answer: C. Content Analysis

Explanation: The first step in applying POPSI is Content Analysis, which involves identifying different component ideas associated with the content of the document.

73. What does the Formalisation step in POPSI involve?

A. Preparing the formalized expression of the subject statement
B. Deciding the standard term for synonyms
C. Augmenting the standardized subject proposition
D. Preparing entries for associative classification

Answer: A. Preparing the formalized expression of the subject statement

Explanation: Formalisation involves preparing the formalized expression of the subject statement according to the rules of syntax based on the results of Content Analysis.

74. What tool is used in the Standardisation step of POPSI?

A. Syntax Guide
B. Permutation Table
C. Classaurus
D. Alphabetisation Tool

Answer: C. Classaurus

Explanation: A Classaurus is used in the Standardisation step to decide the standard term for the formalized expression of the subject statement, especially for terms with synonyms.

75. What does the Modulation step involve in POPSI?

A. Preparing entries for organising classification
B. Augmenting the standardized subject proposition with standard terms
C. Arranging all entries in alphabetical sequence
D. Deciding the approach-terms for associative classification

Answer: B. Augmenting the standardized subject proposition with standard terms

Explanation: Modulation involves augmenting the standardized subject proposition by interpolating and extrapolating successive superordinate's using standard terms with indications of their synonyms.

76. What does the Entry for Organising Classification step involve?

A. Preparing entries under each approach-term
B. Augmenting entries with synonyms
C. Inserting appropriate notations for Elementary Categories, subdivisions, and modifiers
D. Arranging entries in alphabetical sequence

Answer: C. Inserting appropriate notations for Elementary Categories, subdivisions, and modifiers

Explanation: The Entry for Organising Classification step involves preparing entries by inserting appropriate notations for Elementary Categories, subdivisions, and modifiers from the POPSI Table.

77. How is associative classification generated in POPSI?

A. By formalising the subject statement
B. By augmenting standardized subject propositions
C. By cyclic permutation of sought terms under each approach-term
D. By alphabetising all entries

Answer: C. By cyclic permutation of sought terms under each approach-term

Explanation: Associative classification is generated by preparing entries under each approach-term through cyclic permutation of sought terms.

78. What is the final step in applying POPSI?

A. Preparation of Entries of Associative Classification
B. Content Analysis
C. Alphabetisation
D. Modulation

Answer: C. Alphabetisation

Explanation: The final step in applying POPSI is Alphabetisation, which involves arranging all the entries in alphabetical sequence.

The following POPSI Table, like Role Operators in PRECIS, is used in sequencing the component terms for formulating a subject heading

0 Form modifier		
1 General Treatment		
2 Phase relation 2.1 General 2.2 Bias 2.3 Comparison 2.4 Similarity 2.5 Difference 2.6 Application 2.7 Influence		
Common modifiers 3 Time modifier 4 Environment modifier 5 Place modifier		
6 Entity (E) 7 Discipline (D)	.1 Action (A) .2 Property (P) **Note:** Notations .1 and .2 are preceded by the notation of the manifestation in relation to which it is (A) and (P).	, Part . Speciator/Type —Special modifier **Note:** A Species/Type/ Special modifier follows immediately the manifestation in relation to which it is a Species/Type.
8 Core I 9 Base (B) **Note:** Features relating to Core I and Base (B) are analogous to 6 Entity / 7 Discipline /.1 Action / .2 Property.		

Source: IGNOU BLIS Book

79. What is a key feature of post-coordinate indexing systems?

A. They use a fixed order of terms for indexing
B. They provide a greater degree of search manipulation by allowing the combination of search terms in any order
C. They rely on a single term to represent a subject
D. They do not support combining search terms

Answer: B. They provide a greater degree of search manipulation by allowing the combination of search terms in any order

Explanation: Post-coordinate indexing systems allow for a high degree of search manipulation because search terms can be combined in almost any order to retrieve relevant records.

80. What is the name of the indexing system developed by Mortimer Taube?

A. Optical Coincidence Card
B. Uniterm
C. PRECIS
D. Chain Indexing

Answer: B. Uniterm

Explanation: The Uniterm system, developed by Mortimer Taube, is considered one of the most popular post-coordinate indexing models.

81. What is the basic principle behind post-coordinate indexing systems?

A. Fixed order of terms
B. Pre-defined categories
C. Coordination of search terms in any combination or order
D. Single-term representation

Answer: C. Coordination of search terms in any combination or order

Explanation: The basic principle of post-coordinate indexing systems is the coordination of search terms in any combination or order to retrieve information about documents as needed by users.

82. Which indexing system was developed based on the post-coordinate indexing principle?

A. PRECIS
B. Optical Coincidence Card
C. POPSI
D. Chain Indexing

Answer: B. Optical Coincidence Card

Explanation: The Optical Coincidence Card is an example of an indexing system developed based on the post-coordinate indexing principle.

83. How does the post-coordinate indexing system enhance information retrieval?

A. By using a single fixed term
B. By allowing flexible combinations of search terms
C. By limiting the order of terms
D. By organizing terms into pre-defined categories

Answer: B. By allowing flexible combinations of search terms

Explanation: Post-coordinate indexing systems enhance information retrieval by allowing flexible combinations of search terms, which can be coordinated in various ways to find relevant information.

84. What is a key characteristic of the Term Entry System?

A. Terms are posted on the document
B. Entries are filed under each subject heading alphabetically
C. The system requires only one file for searching
D. It uses a fixed number of entries per document

Answer: B. Entries are filed under each subject heading alphabetically

Explanation: In the Term Entry System, entries are prepared for a document under each appropriate subject heading and filed alphabetically.

85. How does the number of entries for a document vary in the Term Entry System?

A. It is fixed regardless of the document content
B. It is dependent on the number of terms associated with the document's content
C. It is determined by the document's physical size
D. It is based on a pre-defined number of terms

Answer: B. It is dependent on the number of terms associated with the document's content

Explanation: The number of entries for a document in the Term Entry System is based on the number of terms associated with the document's content.

86. What are examples of indexing systems that use the Term Entry System?

A. PRECIS and Chain Indexing
B. Uniterm and Peek-a-boo
C. POPSI and Optical Coincidence Card
D. POST and OPAC

Answer: B. Uniterm and Peek-a-boo

Explanation: Uniterm and Peek-a-boo are examples of indexing systems that use the Term Entry System.

87. What is required for searching in the Term Entry System?

A. Searching only one file
B. Searching two files: Term Profile and Document Profile
C. Searching a single database
D. Using a fixed search algorithm

Answer: B. Searching two files: Term Profile and Document Profile

Explanation: In the Term Entry System, searching requires looking into two files: the Term Profile and the Document Profile.

88. What is the primary feature of the Item Entry System?

A. Single entry for each term
B. Single entry for each item
C. Multiple entries for each term
D. Searching multiple files

Answer: B. Single entry for each item

Explanation: In the Item Entry System, a single entry is made for each item, and access is permitted from all appropriate headings.

89. How does the Item Entry System handle searching?

A. It requires searching multiple files
B. It involves searching a single file: Term Profile

C. It needs a physical search of documents
D. It uses a combination of manual and automated searching

Answer: B. It involves searching a single file: Term Profile

Explanation: The Item Entry System requires searching only one file, the Term Profile.

90. What is an example of an Item Entry System?

A. Uniterm
B. Edge-notched Card
C. PRECIS
D. Chain Indexing

Answer: B. Edge-notched Card

Explanation: The Edge-notched Card is an example of an Item Entry System.

91. What was the primary purpose of devising the Uniterm indexing system?

A. To organize a collection of documents at the Library of Congress
B. To manage documents at the Armed Services Technical Information Agency
C. To implement an automated cataloging system
D. To create a new classification scheme for academic libraries

Answer: B. To manage documents at the Armed Services Technical Information Agency

Explanation: Uniterm indexing was devised to organize a collection of documents at the Armed Services Technical Information Agency (ASTIA).

92. What is a unique characteristic of the Uniterm indexing system?

A. It relies on a hierarchical classification
B. Each component term (uniterm) is an independent access point
C. It uses a pre-coordinate indexing approach
D. It requires complex search algorithms

Answer: B. Each component term (uniterm) is an independent access point

Explanation: In Uniterm indexing, each component term (uniterm) is independent and serves as a unique access point to all relevant items in the collection.

93. What does keyword indexing primarily use to generate index entries?

A. Numerical codes
B. Natural language terminology
C. Hierarchical classification
D. Subject categories

Answer: B. Natural language terminology

Explanation: Keyword indexing is based on the use of natural language terminology to generate index entries.

94. How are common words like articles and conjunctions treated in keyword indexing?

A. They are included as keywords
B. They are ignored
C. They are given higher priority
D. They are indexed separately

Answer: B. They are ignored

Explanation: Common words like articles and conjunctions are not treated as keywords in keyword indexing as it is inefficient to do so.

95. What is another name for keyword indexing?

A. Structured Indexing
B. Pre-coordinate Indexing
C. Natural or Free Indexing language
D. Post-coordinate Indexing

Answer: C. Natural or Free Indexing language

Explanation: Keyword indexing is also known as Natural or Free Indexing language.

96. What is KWIC indexing and who introduced it?

A. A method of indexing based on numerical codes, introduced by Hans Peter Luhn
B. A computer-produced index of key terms in context, introduced by Hans Peter Luhn
C. A hierarchical indexing method, introduced by

Mortimer Taube
D. A manual indexing method based on classification schemes, introduced by Derek Austin

Answer: B. A computer-produced index of key terms in context, introduced by Hans Peter Luhn

Explanation: KWIC (Key Word In Context) indexing is a computer-produced index of key terms in context, introduced by Hans Peter Luhn.

97. How does the KWIC indexing system present key terms?

A. In numerical order with surrounding text
B. In alphabetical order with the surrounding text
C. In hierarchical order with titles and abstracts
D. In random order with full text

Answer: B. In alphabetical order with the surrounding text

Explanation: The KWIC indexing system presents key terms in alphabetical order with the text immediately surrounding each term.

98. What are some examples of systems that are faithful adaptations of Luhn's KWIC indexing?

A. DDC and LCC
B. PRECIS and POPSI
C. Chemical Titles and BASIC
D. Chain Indexing and Uniterm

Answer: C. Chemical Titles and BASIC

Explanation: Chemical Titles (of Chemical Abstract Service) and BASIC (Biological Abstracts Subjects in Context) are faithful adaptations of Luhn's KWIC indexing.

99. What is the main feature of Key Word Out of Context (KWOC) indexing?

A. Keywords are enriched with additional terms from abstracts
B. Keywords are extracted from their context and listed separately
C. Keywords are used only from the document's text
D. Keywords are presented with their context in a wrap-around format

Answer: B. Keywords are extracted from their context and listed separately

Explanation: In KWOC indexing, each index word is extracted from its context and printed separately in the left-hand margin, with the unmodified title printed to the right.

100. What does Key-Word Augmented-in-Context (KWAC) indexing aim to address?

A. Inconsistent keyword extraction
B. Inadequate representation of document content by titles
C. Lack of context in KWIC indexing
D. Inefficient alphabetical sorting of index terms

Answer: B. Inadequate representation of document content by titles

Explanation: KWAC indexing aims to address the problem of inadequate representation of the document's thought content when relying solely on titles. It enriches the keywords with additional terms from abstracts or the document's text.

101. How is KWAC related to KWIC indexing?

A. KWAC is an improved version of KWIC indexing
B. KWAC is an older version of KWIC indexing
C. KWAC is a completely unrelated indexing system
D. KWAC replaces KWIC indexing

Answer: A. KWAC is an improved version of KWIC indexing

Explanation: KWAC (Key-Word Augmented-in-Context) is an enriched version of KWIC (Key Word In Context), improving upon it by adding keywords from additijonal sources.

102. What is the process for creating a Double KWIC index?

A. Rotating keywords to appear in the middle of the title
B. Extracting the first significant word and rotating remaining words
C. Combining keywords from the title and

abstract
D. Listing keywords in alphabetical order only

Answer: B. Extracting the first significant word and rotating remaining words

Explanation: In Double KWIC indexing, the first significant word in a title is extracted as the main index term and replaced by an asterisk. The remaining words are rotated to allow each significant word to appear as the first word of a wrap-around subordinate entry under the main index term.

103. What sorting method is used for index entries in Double KWIC indexing?

A. Alphabetical sorting of only main terms
B. Numerical sorting of subordinate terms
C. Alphabetical sorting of both main terms and subordinate terms
D. Random sorting of all terms

Answer: C. Alphabetical sorting of both main terms and subordinate terms

Explanation: Double KWIC index entries are sorted alphabetically with respect to both main terms (primary sort) and subordinate terms (secondary sort).

104. Can main index terms in Double KWIC indexing consist of multiple words?

A. No, they are restricted to single words only
B. Yes, they can consist of multi-word terms derived from contiguous sets of words
C. No, they must be derived from the title only
D. Yes, but only if they are exact phrases from the title

Answer: B. Yes, they can consist of multi-word terms derived from contiguous sets of words

Explanation: In Double KWIC indexing, main index terms are not restricted to single words but may consist of multi-word terms derived from contiguous sets of words in the titles.

105. What is the primary characteristic of the KWWC (Key-Word-With-Context) Index?

A. It uses full titles for indexing
B. It considers only the part of the title relevant to the keyword
C. It includes both keywords and authors' names
D. It arranges key terms alphabetically

Answer: B. It considers only the part of the title relevant to the keyword

Explanation: The KWWC index focuses on indexing only the part of the title that is relevant to the keyword, rather than using the full title.

106. How does the KEYTALPHA (Key-Term Alphabetical) Index differ from other keyword indexes?

A. It lists keywords alphabetically and is used for permuted subject indexing
B. It includes only key terms with context
C. It indexes both keywords and authors' names
D. It takes fragmented words as key entries

Answer: A. It lists keywords alphabetically and is used for permuted subject indexing

Explanation: The KEYTALPHA index arranges key terms alphabetically and is a modified version used for permuted subject indexing. It is used in the 'Oceanic Abstract.'

107. What does the WADEX (Word and Author Index) include that other keyword indexes might not?

A. Only keywords from the abstract
B. Key terms arranged alphabetically
C. Both keywords and names of authors
D. Fragmented words

Answer: C. Both keywords and names of authors

Explanation: The WADEX index includes both keywords and the names of authors, satisfying both author and subject indexing needs. Another version, AKWIC (Author and Keyword In Context) index, is a variant of WADEX.

108. What is the main feature of the KLIC (Key-Letter-In-Context) Index?

A. It uses full words as entries
B. It indexes fragmented words or key letters
C. It includes key terms and authors
D. It arranges key terms alphabetically

Answer: B. It indexes fragmented words or key letters

Explanation: The KLIC index focuses on indexing fragmented words or key letters rather than full words. It retrieves terms based on these key letters at the beginning or end of the word.

109. What publication used the KLIC index as a guide?

A. Applied Mechanics Review
B. Oceanic Abstract
C. Chemical Society (London)
D. Permuted Subject Index

Answer: C. Chemical Society (London)

Explanation: The Chemical Society (London) published a KLIC index as a guide to truncation.

110. Who invented the KWIC (Key Word In Context) indexing system and when was it reported?

A. Hans Peter Luhn, in 1958
B. Hans Peter Luhn, in 1960
C. IBM, in 1958
D. IBM, in 1960

Answer: B. Hans Peter Luhn, in 1960

Explanation: Hans Peter Luhn invented the KWIC indexing system and reported it in 1960.

111. What is the primary distinction between a logical file and a physical file?

A. Logical files are abstract representations of data, while physical files are actual data stored on a medium.
B. Logical files are stored on physical media, while physical files are abstract representations of data.
C. Logical files are used for data retrieval, while physical files are used for data entry.
D. Logical files contain multiple data subsets, while physical files contain only one data subset.

Answer: A. Logical files are abstract representations of data, while physical files are actual data stored on a medium.

Explanation: A logical file is an abstract representation perceived by an application program, whereas a physical file is the actual data stored on physical media like disks or tapes.

112. Which file organization method involves rows representing documents and columns representing words?

A. Sequential File
B. Inverted File
C. Indexed Sequential File
D. Chained Files

Answer: B. Inverted File

Explanation: In an inverted file, rows represent documents and columns represent words, with intersections indicating the presence of words in documents.

113. What is the purpose of B-Tree indexing?

A. To organize keys in a hierarchical structure for easier data retrieval.
B. To store keys in a tabular format for quick search queries.
C. To link multiple records dynamically for easy updating.
D. To organize records based on their sequential entry into the database.

Answer: A. To organize keys in a hierarchical structure for easier data retrieval.

Explanation: The B-Tree indexing system organizes keys in a hierarchical tree structure to allow efficient retrieval, insertion, and deletion of records.

114. Which method involves indexing terms based on their frequency of occurrence in a text?

A. Relative Frequency Method
B. Term Frequency Method
C. Term Weighting Method
D. Co-occurrence Method

Answer: B. Term Frequency Method

Explanation: The Term Frequency Method indexes terms based on how frequently they occur in a text, indicating their significance or rarity.

115. How does the Relative Frequency Method differ from the Term Frequency Method?

A. It focuses on the frequency of terms in a specific document compared to the entire database.
B. It indexes terms based on their significance in a search request.
C. It assigns different levels of importance to terms based on their position in the text.
D. It uses a probabilistic model to measure term occurrence.

Answer: A. It focuses on the frequency of terms in a specific document compared to the entire database.

Explanation: The Relative Frequency Method compares the frequency of terms in a document with their frequency in the whole database to determine their significance.

116. What does the Term Weighting Method take into account when assigning importance to terms?

A. The overall frequency of terms in the database.
B. The position and usage of terms in a document.
C. The rarity of terms in the document only.
D. The occurrence of terms in the title and abstract only.

Answer: B. The position and usage of terms in a document.

Explanation: The Term Weighting Method assigns importance to terms based on their frequency and their position or usage within the document, such as in the title or abstract.

117. Which category of search engine compiles its own searchable databases on the web?

A. Meta-search Engine
B. Regional Search Engine
C. General Search Engine
D. Specialized Search Engine

Answer: C. General Search Engine

Explanation: General Search Engines cover a range of services and compile their own searchable databases from the web.

118. What is the primary function of a Meta-search Engine?

A. To compile its own searchable database using crawlers.
B. To forward queries to other search engines and use their databases.
C. To focus on country-specific resources and databases.
D. To provide search results based on user preferences and history.

Answer: B. To forward queries to other search engines and use their databases.

Explanation: Meta-search Engines do not compile their own databases but instead forward queries to other search engines and utilize their databases.

119. Which of the following is an example of a Regional Search Engine?

A. Dogpile
B. Excite uk
C. Google
D. MetaCrawler

Answer: B. Excite uk

Explanation: Excite uk is a Regional Search Engine focusing on resources specific to the UK.

120. What differentiates General Search Engines from Meta-search Engines?

A. General Search Engines use databases from other search engines, while Meta-search Engines compile their own databases.
B. General Search Engines compile their own databases, while Meta-search Engines use databases maintained by other search engines.
C. General Search Engines are region-specific, while Meta-search Engines are global.
D. General Search Engines forward queries to other search engines, while Meta-search Engines compile their own databases.

Answer: B. General Search Engines compile their own databases, while Meta-search Engines use databases maintained by other search engines.

Explanation: General Search Engines create their own searchable databases, whereas Meta-search Engines rely on databases from other search engines and forward queries to them.

More info: Search Engine Categories Search engines may be divided into the following main categories: λ **General Search Engine**: It covers a range of services and compiles their own searchable databases on the web. Examples: Google, Alta Vista, etc. λ **Regional Search Engine**: It refers to country specific search engine for locating varied resources region-wise. Examples: Euro Ferret (Europe), Excite uk (UK), etc. λ **Meta-search Engine**: A meta search engine does not use crawler for compiling their own searchable database. These search engines utilise databases maintained by other individual search engines. When a query is put before this type of search engine, it forwards that query to other search engines. Examples of such search engines are: Dog pile, Ask Jeeves, Inference Find, MetaCrawler, Profusion, Surfwax. λ **Subject Specific Search Engine**: It does not attempt to index the entire Web. Instead, it focuses on searching for Websites or pages within a defined subject area, geographical area or type of resource. Examples: Geo index (Geography / Environmental science), Biochemistry Easy Search Tool (Biochemistry). Because this specific search engine aims for depth of coverage within a single area, rather than breadth of coverage across subjects, they are often able to index documents that are not included even in the largest search engines databases. Some examples of subject specific search engines are:, Bioweb (Biotechnology), Scirus (Sc. & Tech.), Medical world search, Health A to Z (Medical Sc.), Math Search 121 (Mathematical Sc.), Agri Surf (Agricultural Sc.), Law Crawler (Law), KHOJ (India specific search engine), etc.

Source: IGNOU BLIS book

121. What is a subject/information gateway?

A. A database that compiles data from various sources for analysis.
B. A web site that provides searchable and browsable access to online resources focused around a specific subject.
C. A search engine that generates results based on user queries.
D. A tool that automatically indexes documents for research purposes.

Answer: B. A web site that provides searchable and browsable access to online resources focused on a specific subject.

Explanation: A subject/information gateway is a web site designed to provide searchable and browsable access to online resources related to a specific subject.

122. How are resource descriptions typically created for subject gateways?

A. Through automated processes.
B. By manual curation and review.
C. By user-generated content.
D. Using AI algorithms.

Answer: B. By manual curation and review.

Explanation: Resource descriptions in subject gateways are usually created manually rather than being generated through automated processes.

123. What distinguishes library gateways from portals?

A. Library gateways are focused on commercial content, while portals are academic.
B. Library gateways are collections of databases and informational sites reviewed by specialists, while portals are general-purpose sites.
C. Library gateways use automated indexing, while portals use manual curation.
D. Library gateways provide news updates, while portals focus on educational resources.

Answer: B. Library gateways are collections of databases and informational sites reviewed by specialists, while portals are general-purpose sites.

Explanation: Library gateways consist of collections of databases and informational sites, often reviewed and recommended by specialists, whereas portals are broader in scope and not necessarily reviewed by specialists.

124. Which of the following is an example of a library gateway?

A. Google
B. Internet Public Library
C. Amazon
D. Wikipedia

Answer: B. Internet Public Library

Explanation: The Internet Public Library is an example of a library gateway, which provides curated and recommended academic resources.

125. What is the primary purpose of library gateways?

A. To provide entertainment and social media content.
B. To offer searchable and browsable access to recommended, academically-oriented pages on the Web.
C. To host e-commerce platforms.
D. To deliver real-time news updates.

Answer: B. To offer searchable and browsable access to recommended, academically oriented pages on the Web.

Explanation: Library gateways are designed to support research and reference needs by offering access to academically oriented pages on the Web.

More info: Some notable examples of library gateways are Librarians' Index to the Internet, Internet Public Library, Academic Information, WWW Virtual Library, Digital Librarian, Infomine, etc.

More info:

3) The concept of 'chain' as the foundation of chain indexing is a structural manifestation of a subject, which refers to the parts constituting a subject and their mutual interrelationship. It is a modulated sequence of sub-classes or isolate ideas. Since the chain expressed the modulated sequence more effectively in a notational classification of subjects, this method takes the class number of the document concerned as the base for deriving subject headings.

4) The basic steps in chain indexing are (1) Construction of the class number of the subject of the document; (2) Representation of the Class Number in the form of a Chain; (3) Determination of links like Sought Links (SL), Unsought Links (USL), False Links (FL), and Missing Links (ML); (4) Preparation of Specific Subject Heading; (5) Preparation of Subject Reference Headings; (6) Preparation of Subject Reference Entries; (7) Preparation of Cross References, if any; and (8) Alphabetisation.

5) Principle of context dependency in PRECIS is seen as a combination of context and dependency. When this principle is followed in a PRECIS input string, each term is qualified and sets the next term into its wider context. In other words, the meaning of each term in the string depends upon the meaning of its preceding term and taken together, they all represent the single context. Each term is hence dependent, directly or indirectly, on all the terms which precede it.

6) Two-line-three part entry structure is followed in PRECIS. The first line is occupied by two parts— Lead and Qualifier, which together constitute the Heading. Lead is occupied by the approach term and Qualifier position is occupied by the term(s) that sets the Lead into wider context. The second line is occupied by the third part, i.e. Display position which consists of those additional set of qualifying terms, which rely upon the heading for their context. Index entries in PRECIS are basically generated in three formats: (a) Standard format— entries are generated when any of the primary operators (0), (1), and (2) or its dependent elements appear in the Lead; (b) Predicate transformation— entries are generated under a term coded (3) that immediately follows a term coded either by (2) or (s) or (t); and (c) Inverted format— entries are generated whenever a term coded by an operator in the range from (4) to (6) or its dependent elements appear in the Lead.

7) Different operational stages of POPSI may be categorised under three components: Analysis, Synthesis, and Permutation. The work of 'Analysis' and 'Synthesis' is primarily based on the postulates associated with the deep structure of SILs for

generating organising classification. The task of analysis and synthesis is largely guided by the following POPSI-table. The work of 'Permutation' is based on cyclic permutation of each term-of-approach, either individually or in association with other terms for generating associative classification effect in alphabetical arrangement.

8) The major steps in formulating index entries according to POPSI are (1) Content Analysis, (2) Formalisation, (3) Standardisation, (4) Modulation, (5) Preparation of Entry for Organising Classification, (6) Approach-term Selection, (7) Preparation of Entries of Associative Classification, and (8) Alphabetisation.

9) In pre-coordinate indexing system, coordination of component terms is carried out before the users come to search the index file, i.e. at the time of indexing by the indexer (i.e. at input stage) in anticipation of the users' approach. But in postcoordinate indexing, component terms of a subject are kept separately uncoordinated by the indexer, and the user does the coordination of concepts at the time of searching (i.e. at the output stage).

10) Search devices used to avoid false coordination of terms in Post coordinate indexing are: (a) Use of Pre-coordinated Terms, (b) Links, (c) Roles, and (d) Weighting.

11) Different varieties of keyword indexing include Key Word in Context (KWIC) Indexing, Key Word Out of Context (KWOC) Indexing, Key-Word Augmentedin-Context (KWAC) Indexing, Double KWIC Indexing, KWWC (Key-WordWith-Context) Indexing, KEYTALPHA (Key-Term Alphabetical) Indexing, KLIC (Key-Letter-In-Context) Indexing, and WADEX (Word and Author Index).

12) Library is a collection of databases. For example, Accession register is a database, Card catalogue is a database, Circulation records constitute a database, Member register is a database. We need to add, edit and maintain all these databases regularly. The advantages of computerised indexing system are as follows: Redundancy can be reduced; Inconsistency can be avoided; Data can be shared; Standards can be enforced; Security restrictions can be applied; Integrity can be maintained and conflicting requirement may be solved.

13) A typical computerised indexing system has four major components: 1) Database, 2) Search process, 3) Language of indexing, and 4) User interface. Computerised indexing systems can be categorised into following four groups on the basis of the varieties of information demands of different user groups: 1) Online Database Indexing, 2) Optical Disk based Database Indexing, 3) OPAC based Indexing, and 4) Indexing Internet Resources.

BLI 223 BLOCK UNIT 12 CONCEPTUAL CHANGES: IMPACT OF TECHNOLOGY

1. What is considered one of the earliest forms of knowledge organization?

A. The Dewey Decimal Classification
B. The Vedas
C. The Library of Alexandria
D. The Paris Principles

Answer: B. The Vedas

Explanation: The Vedas, dating around 500-400 BCE, represent one of the earliest forms of knowledge organization, categorizing human knowledge into four categories.

2. What classification system was formulated during the Han Dynasty?

A. Dewey Decimal Classification
B. Thomas Jefferson's Classification System
C. A library classification system
D. Paris Principles

Answer: C. A library classification system

Explanation: During the Han Dynasty, a library classification system was developed, marking an early example of knowledge organization.

3. Which method did Thomas Jefferson use for his classification system?

A. Dewey Decimal System
B. Baconian Methods
C. Cutter's Rules
D. AACR2

Answer: B. Baconian Methods

Explanation: Thomas Jefferson's classification system was based on Baconian methods, which were used to organize knowledge.

4. What were the contributions of Anthony Panizzi and Charles Ammi Cutter to knowledge organization?

A. Development of the Dewey Decimal Classification
B. Formulation of the Paris Principles and Rules for Dictionary Catalogues
C. Creation of the LCSH
D. Establishment of the UDC

Answer: B. Formulation of the Paris Principles and Rules for Dictionary Catalogues

Explanation: Anthony Panizzi and Charles Ammi Cutter contributed to the formulation of the Paris Principles and Rules for Dictionary Catalogues.

5. What is a primary purpose of bibliographic classification schemes like LC, DDC, CC, and UDC?

A. To control electronic resources
B. To store a single item at a single location on a shelf
C. To develop authority files
D. To create digital catalogs

Answer: B. To store a single item at a single location on a shelf

Explanation: Bibliographic classification schemes such as LC, DDC, CC, and UDC were developed to ensure that each item is stored at a specific location on a shelf.

6. What is the role of subject heading schemes like LCSH and Sears in libraries?

A. To develop authority files
B. To provide multiple access points for specific subject areas
C. To manage digital repositories
D. To control variant forms of names

Answer: B. To provide multiple access points for specific subject areas

Explanation: Subject heading schemes like LCSH and Sears are used to provide multiple access points for specific subject areas within libraries.

7. What is the purpose of Authority Files in libraries?

A. To catalog electronic books
B. To control variant forms of personal, organizational, and geographic names
C. To develop new classification schemes
D. To archive historical documents

Answer: B. To control variant forms of personal, organizational, and geographic names

Explanation: Authority Files are used to manage and control variant forms of personal, organizational, and geographic names for effective searching and browsing.

8. How did early bibliographic classification schemes contribute to modern Knowledge Organisation Systems?

A. By developing networked resource access
B. By focusing solely on print resources
C. By creating digital libraries
D. By integrating multimedia resources

Answer: A. By developing networked resource access

Explanation: Early bibliographic classification schemes, originally designed for print resources, laid the groundwork for developing Knowledge Organisation Systems that make networked resources accessible.

9. What does SKOS stand for in the context of knowledge organization for web resources?

A. Simple Knowledge Online System
B. Simple Knowledge Organization System
C. Structured Knowledge Online System
D. Standard Knowledge Organization Scheme

Answer: B. Simple Knowledge Organization System

Explanation: SKOS stands for Simple Knowledge Organization System, which is a model for representing and managing concept schemes.

10. What types of concept schemes can SKOS represent?

A. Only classification schemes
B. Only thesauri and subject heading lists
C. Thesauri, classification schemes, subject heading lists, taxonomies, folksonomies, and other controlled vocabularies
D. Only taxonomies and folksonomies

Answer: C. Thesauri, classification schemes, subject heading lists, taxonomies, folksonomies, and other controlled vocabularies

Explanation: SKOS can represent various concept schemes, including thesauri, classification schemes, subject heading lists, taxonomies, folksonomies, and other types of controlled vocabulary.

11. On what framework is SKOS based?

A. Structured Query Language (SQL)
B. Resource Description Framework (RDF)
C. Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP)
D. Extensible Markup Language (XML)

Answer: B. Resource Description Framework (RDF)

Explanation: SKOS is an application of the Resource Description Framework (RDF), which allows for the representation and linking of concepts on the World Wide Web.

12. What capabilities does SKOS provide for web data integration?

A. It allows for the creation of web pages
B. It enables concepts to be composed, published, linked, and integrated with data on the Web
C. It converts web pages into databases
D. It formats data for printing

Answer: B. It enables concepts to be composed, published, linked, and integrated with data on the Web

Explanation: SKOS allows concepts to be composed and published on the Web, linked with other data, and integrated into other concept schemes.

13. How are KOS grouped into general categories?

A. Authority Files, Dictionaries, Thesauri
B. Glossaries, Gazetteers, Dictionaries
C. Authority Files, Glossaries, Gazetteers
D. Thesauri, Classification Schemes, Subject Headings

Answer: C. Authority Files, Glossaries, Gazetteers

Explanation: KOS are generally grouped into Authority Files, Glossaries, and Gazetteers, each

serving different purposes in knowledge organization.

14. What is the primary function of Authority Files in KOS?

A. To provide definitions for terms
B. To control variant names for an entity or domain values for a particular field
C. To list place names and features
D. To create hierarchical classifications

Answer: B. To control variant names for an entity or domain values for a particular field

Explanation: Authority Files are used to control variant names for an entity or the domain values for a particular field, ensuring consistency in naming and classification.

15. What distinguishes a Glossary from other KOS types?

A. It provides a hierarchical structure of terms
B. It offers definitions and terms from a specific subject field or work
C. It controls variant names for entities
D. It provides lists of place names

Answer: B. It offers definitions and terms from a specific subject field or work

Explanation: A Glossary is a list of terms with definitions, often from a specific subject field or work, and does not provide hierarchical structures.

16. What does a Gazetteer typically include?

A. Definitions of terms used in a subject field
B. Variant names for an entity
C. A dictionary of place names, sometimes identified by feature type
D. Pre-coordinated subject headings

Answer: C. A dictionary of place names, sometimes identified by feature type

Explanation: A Gazetteer is a dictionary of place names, which may include feature types such as river, city, or school.

17. How do Dictionaries differ from other KOS types?

A. They offer hierarchical structures
B. They list terms alphabetically with definitions and related terms
C. They provide control over variant names
D. They group terms by concept

Answer: B. They list terms alphabetically with definitions and related terms

Explanation: Dictionaries list terms alphabetically with their definitions, and sometimes synonyms and related terms, without an explicit hierarchical structure.

18. What is a characteristic feature of Classification Schemes and Taxonomies in KOS?

A. They provide a shallow structure with pre-coordinated headings
B. They show relationships between terms
C. They offer hierarchical arrangements of topics with numeric or alphabetic notations
D. They list definitions and terms

Answer: C. They offer hierarchical arrangements of topics with numeric or alphabetic notations

Explanation: Classification Schemes and Taxonomies provide hierarchical arrangements of topics using numeric or alphabetic notations, and lack the explicit relationships of a thesaurus.

19. What is the purpose of Thesauri in KOS?

A. To provide definitions for terms
B. To list place names
C. To show relationships between concepts, such as hierarchy, equivalence, and associative
D. To classify documents into categories

Answer: C. To show relationships between concepts, such as hierarchy, equivalence, and associative

Explanation: Thesauri show relationships between terms, including hierarchy, equivalence, and associative relationships.

20. What is a recent development in thesauri known as Visual Thesaurus?

A. A thesaurus that lists terms alphabetically
B. A thesaurus that provides definitions of terms
C. A thesaurus that visually displays connections between words
D. A thesaurus that organizes terms hierarchically

Answer: C. A thesaurus that visually displays connections between words

Explanation: The Visual Thesaurus is a new type of thesaurus that allows users to discover the connections between words through a visually engaging display.

21. What are the competing systems of nomenclature for chemical names?

A. Chemical Abstracts Service (CAS) and International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry
B. American Chemical Society and European Chemical Society
C. Chemical Registry Service and International Chemical Union
D. Chemical Data Service and Global Chemical Association

Answer: A. Chemical Abstracts Service (CAS) and International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry

Explanation: The competing systems of nomenclature include those of the Chemical Abstracts Service (CAS) and the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC).

22. How does BIOSIS link chemical names to molecular structures?

A. By using manual indexing of chemical names
B. Through the use of chemical registry numbers and CAS Registry Numbers
C. By applying commercial synonyms in bibliographic citations
D. By using common nomenclature systems only

Answer: B. Through the use of chemical registry numbers and CAS Registry Numbers

Explanation: BIOSIS uses chemical registry numbers and CAS Registry Numbers to link chemical names with molecular structures.

23. What role does the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C) play in the Semantic Web?

A. It provides commercial chemical databases
B. It develops Web standards and guidelines for metadata processing
C. It manages traditional chemical nomenclature systems
D. It indexes bibliographic citations manually

Answer: B. It develops Web standards and guidelines for metadata processing

Explanation: The W3C is responsible for creating and developing Web standards and guidelines, including those for metadata processing in the Semantic Web.

24. What technologies are promoted by the W3C's Semantic Web Activity for expressing and processing metadata?

A. Resource Description Framework (RDF), Web Ontology Language (OWL), and Simple Knowledge Organisation System (SKOS)
B. Dublin Core Metadata Initiative (DCMI) and Chemical Abstracts Service (CAS)
C. International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC) and Simple Knowledge Organisation System (SKOS)
D. American Chemical Society and Web Ontology Language (OWL)

Answer: A. Resource Description Framework (RDF), Web Ontology Language (OWL), and Simple Knowledge Organisation System (SKOS)

Explanation: The W3C's Semantic Web Activity promotes RDF, OWL, and SKOS for expressing and processing metadata.

25. What is one facet of the Semantic Web vision according to W3C?

A. To improve manual indexing of unstructured information
B. To better organize unstructured information on the Web
C. To replace traditional chemical nomenclature systems

D. To reduce the use of metadata in Web technologies

Answer: B. To better organize unstructured information on the Web

Explanation: One aspect of the Semantic Web vision is to better organize vast amounts of unstructured information on the Web and provide new ways to discover and share that information.

26. What does the W3C's Semantic Web Activity require for applying RDF and OWL technologies?

A. Manual mapping of all Web information
B. Construction of detailed "maps" of specific domains of knowledge
C. Elimination of unstructured data
D. Integration of commercial chemical databases

Answer: B. Construction of detailed "maps" of specific domains of knowledge

Explanation: The application of RDF and OWL technologies requires constructing detailed "maps" of particular domains of knowledge to provide precise descriptions and structures.

BLI 223 BLOCK UNIT 13 ONLINE CATALOGUEUES:DESIGN AND SERVICES

1. How did ancient libraries, such as those in Sumer, catalog their collections?

A. Using electronic databases
B. As inventory lists of stone tablets
C. Through online catalogues
D. With card catalogues

Answer: B. As inventory lists of stone tablets

Explanation: Ancient libraries, like those in Sumer, used inventory lists to catalog their collections of stone tablets.

2. What was a major drawback of printed catalogues when they first became popular?

A. They were easy to update and inexpensive
B. They were time-consuming, labor-intensive, and expensive
C. They were never widely adopted
D. They required no storage space

Answer: B. They were time-consuming, labor-intensive, and expensive

Explanation: Printed catalogues were time-consuming, labor-intensive, and expensive to produce and keep up-to-date.

3. Who introduced the card catalogue for public use, and in what year?

A. John Langdon Sibley in 1860
B. Harvard Librarian in 1960
C. Library of Congress in 1930
D. John Doe in 1800

Answer: A. John Langdon Sibley in 1860

Explanation: Harvard Librarian John Langdon Sibley introduced the card catalogue for public use in 1860.

4. What was the primary advantage of card catalogues over printed catalogues?

A. They were more expensive and less durable
B. They were easier to update and manage
C. They were less organized and harder to use
D. They required no physical storage

Answer: B. They were easier to update and manage

Explanation: Card catalogues were easier to update and manage compared to printed catalogues.

5. What significant development did the Library of Congress make in the early 1960s?

A. Introduction of online catalogues
B. Creation of machine-readable catalogues
C. Production of card catalogues
D. Publishing printed catalogues

Answer: B. Creation of machine-readable catalogues

Explanation: In the early 1960s, the Library of Congress developed machine-readable catalogues for transferring bibliographic records into electronic format.

6. What was the main objective of the Library of Congress's initiative in the early 1960s?

A. To immediately build an online catalogue
B. To create machine-readable catalogues
C. To discontinue the use of card catalogues
D. To print more catalogues

Answer: B. To create machine-readable catalogues

Explanation: The primary objective was to create machine-readable catalogues to transfer bibliographic records into electronic format.

7. How long did it take for libraries to reach the era of online catalogues after the Library of Congress's initiative?

A. More than three decades
B. Less than a decade
C. One year
D. Two decades

Answer: A. More than three decades

Explanation: It took more than three decades for libraries to reach the era of online catalogues following the Library of Congress's initiative.

8. What period is referred to as "The First Age of Descriptive Cataloguing"?

A. The era of online catalogues
B. The period before Panizzi's rules
C. The age of the single-author code
D. The time of card catalogues

Answer: C. The age of the single-author code

Explanation: The First Age of Descriptive Cataloguing, also known as the age of the single-author code, began with Panizzi and included Cutter.

9. Who labeled the period as "the age of the single-author code"?

A. Anthony Panizzi
B. Michael Gorman
C. Thomas Carlyle
D. Charles Ammi Cutter

Answer: B. Michael Gorman

Explanation: Michael Gorman labeled the period as "the age of the single-author code."

10. What significant work did Anthony Panizzi produce in 1841?

A. Rules for the Compilation of the Catalogue
B. The Card Catalogue System
C. The Online Catalogue Guidelines
D. The Bibliographic Control Manual

Answer: A. Rules for the Compilation of the Catalogue

Explanation: Anthony Panizzi produced "Rules for the Compilation of the Catalogue" in 1841, which was a significant work in descriptive cataloguing.

11. How did Thomas Carlyle and his contemporaries view Panizzi's rules?

A. As essential for cataloguing
B. As a revolutionary approach
C. As unnecessary and simplistic
D. As highly advanced and comprehensive

Answer: C. As unnecessary and simplistic

Explanation: Thomas Carlyle and his contemporaries viewed Panizzi's rules as unnecessary and thought of a catalogue merely as a simple listing of authors and book titles.

12. What was Panizzi's rationale for his rules on cataloguing?

A. Readers only needed basic book information
B. Catalogues should include details on different editions
C. Catalogues should not list authors
D. All books should be catalogued similarly

Answer: B. Catalogues should include details on different editions

Explanation: Panizzi believed that while a reader might know the work they require, they could not be expected to know all the peculiarities of different editions, which catalogues should provide.

13. What significant contribution did Charles Ammi Cutter make to cataloguing?

A. Online catalogue development
B. The creation of the card catalogue
C. Rules for a Dictionary Catalogue
D. The introduction of the KWIC system

Answer: C. Rules for a Dictionary Catalogue

Explanation: Charles Ammi Cutter's "Rules for a Dictionary Catalogue," published in 1876, had a deep impact on cataloguing principles and methodologies.

14. What is referred to as the "Second Age of Descriptive Cataloguing"?

A. The era of the single-author code
B. The era of the committee code
C. The era of online catalogues
D. The era of card catalogues

Answer: B. The era of the committee code

Explanation: The Second Age of Descriptive Cataloguing, also known as "the era of the committee code," was marked by the publication of common cataloguing rules by the American Library Association and the Library Association of the United Kingdom in 1908.

15. What was the significance of the year 1908 in cataloguing?

A. Introduction of the AACR
B. Development of the card catalogue
C. Publication of the first Anglo-American cataloguing rules
D. Creation of the KWIC indexing

Answer: C. Publication of the first Anglo-American cataloguing rules

Explanation: In 1908, the American Library Association and the Library Association of the United Kingdom published a set of common cataloguing rules, marking the first Anglo-American cataloguing rules.

16. When did the Third Age of Descriptive Cataloguing begin, and what was its major development?

A. 1876, with the introduction of Cutter's rules
B. 1908, with the publication of committee rules
C. 1967, with the release of Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules
D. 1961, with the Paris Principles

Answer: C. 1967, with the release of Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules

Explanation: The Third Age of Descriptive Cataloguing began in 1967 with the release of the Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules (AACR), which was an international standardisation of descriptive cataloguing rules based on the Paris Principles.

17. What did the Paris Principles, adopted in 1961, contribute to cataloguing standards?

A. They led to the creation of online catalogues
B. They provided a basis for the AACR
C. They introduced the concept of card catalogues
D. They were focused on chemical indexing

Answer: B. They provided a basis for the AACR

Explanation: The Paris Principles passed at the International Conference on Cataloguing Principles in 1961 served as the basis for the Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules (AACR) and influenced other national codes.

18. What were the main features of the Third Age of Descriptive Cataloguing?

A. Development of card catalogues and inventory lists
B. International standardisation, user needs, and standardisation
C. Introduction of KWIC indexing and card catalogues
D. Creation of authority files and glossaries

Answer: B. International standardisation, user needs, and standardisation

Explanation: The Third Age of Descriptive Cataloguing was characterised by international standardisation of descriptive cataloguing rules, user needs, and standardisation, based on the Paris Principles.

19. What are the three cataloguing standards produced during the Third Age?

A. MARC, ISBD, and DDC
B. MARC, AACR2, and UDC
C. MARC, ISBD, and AACR2
D. MARC, LCSH, and UDC

Answer: C. MARC, ISBD, and AACR2

Explanation: The three cataloguing standards produced during the Third Age are MARC (Machine Readable Cataloguing), ISBD (International Standard Bibliographic Description), and AACR2 (Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules, Second Edition).

20. What was the purpose of the International Standard Bibliographic Description (ISBD) published in 1971?

A. To develop machine-readable catalogues
B. To standardise the presentation of descriptive data for machine translation into MARC
C. To create a new card catalogue system
D. To establish guidelines for online catalogues

Answer: B. To standardise the presentation of descriptive data for machine translation into MARC

Explanation: ISBD was published to standardise the presentation of bibliographic data so that it could be machine-translated into the MARC format.

21. What significant event happened in 1978 regarding AACR2?

A. Publication of the first MARC standard
B. Historic agreement between North American and British library associations to publish AACR2 as a single text document
C. Introduction of ISBD to standardise bibliographic data
D. Creation of the first card catalogue system

Answer: B. Historic agreement between North American and British library associations to publish AACR2 as a single text document

Explanation: In 1978, AACR2 (Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules, Second Edition) was published as a continuous single text document following a historic agreement between North American and British library associations.

22. What was a primary characteristic of the cataloguing standards produced during the Third Age?

A. They were designed for digital catalogues only
B. They were originally developed for physical card catalogues
C. They focused solely on online cataloguing
D. They were developed for non-bibliographic databases

Answer: B. They were originally developed for physical card catalogues

Explanation: The cataloguing standards of the Third Age, such as MARC, ISBD, and AACR2, were initially designed with specifications well-suited for the physical catalogue environment of 5" × 3" cards.

23. According to Michael Gorman, what brought us closer to Universal Bibliographic Control (UBC)?

A. The introduction of online catalogues
B. The confluence of a need for less expensive cataloguing and the MARC format
C. The development of physical catalogues
D. The creation of card catalogues

Answer: B. The confluence of a need for less expensive cataloguing and the MARC format

Explanation: Michael Gorman believed that the need for less expensive and more current cataloguing, combined with the MARC format, brought libraries closer to achieving Universal Bibliographic Control (UBC).

24. What was the initial purpose of the MARC format developed by the Library of Congress in the early 60s?

A. To design a new card catalogue system
B. To encode bibliographic elements for books in roman script
C. To replace printed catalogue cards with digital records
D. To develop a universal standard for online catalogues

Answer: B. To encode bibliographic elements for books in roman script

Explanation: The initial purpose of MARC was to encode bibliographic elements of books in roman script and facilitate the transfer of catalogue records into computers.

25. How did the Library of Congress ensure that the benefits of machine-readable catalogues were shared with libraries without machines?

A. By providing online access to catalogues
B. By distributing printed catalogue cards in conventional format
C. By developing a new catalogue management software
D. By offering training programs for cataloguers

Answer: B. By distributing printed catalogue cards in conventional format

Explanation: The Library of Congress distributed printed catalogue cards in conventional format to share the benefits of machine-readable catalogues

with libraries that did not have the technology to read them.

26. What is the definition of an online catalogue?

A. A catalogue in paper format accessible online
B. A catalogue in electronic (machine-readable) format accessible online
C. A catalogue available in multiple physical locations
D. A catalogue formatted only for printed materials

Answer: B. A catalogue in electronic (machine-readable) format accessible online

Explanation: An online catalogue is defined as a catalogue in electronic (machine-readable) format that is accessible online.

27. What are some challenges faced by cataloguers today ?

A. High costs and time-consuming cataloguing processes
B. Ease of managing electronic resources
C. Simplified formats for various types of materials
D. Reduction in the amount of library materials

Answer: A. High costs and time-consuming cataloguing processes

Explanation: Cataloguers face challenges such as high costs, time-consuming cataloguing processes, and difficulties in managing and making available various formats of electronic resources.

28. What is the key to machine-readability in the MARC format?

A. The use of printed catalogue cards
B. The implementation of a common record format
C. The use of digital storage devices
D. The creation of a new catalogue management software

Answer: B. The implementation of a common record format

Explanation: The key to machine-readability in the MARC format is its common record format, which enables machines to identify and process data elements.

29. How is the MARC physical data structuring scheme recognized and used internationally?

A. As a proprietary format only used in the US
B. As a national and international standard, implemented by various communication formats
C. As a new standard created specifically for MARC 21
D. As a regional format limited to specific countries

Answer: B. As a national and international standard, implemented by various communication formats

Explanation: The MARC physical data structuring scheme is recognized and used as a standard both nationally (ANSI Z39.2) and internationally (ISO 2709), and is implemented by various bibliographic information interchange formats.

30. What is MARC 21?

A. A completely new bibliographic format
B. A harmonized edition of USMARC, CAN/MARC, UKMARC, and AUSMARC
C. An older version of the MARC format
D. A specialized format for digital resources only

Answer: B. A harmonized edition of USMARC, CAN/MARC, UKMARC, and AUSMARC

Explanation: MARC 21 is a harmonized edition of USMARC, CAN/MARC, UKMARC, and AUSMARC, consolidated into a single scheme.

31. How does MARC 21 differ from its predecessors?

A. It focuses solely on geographic issues
B. It is a completely new format with different content
C. It addresses issues beyond national preferences and adapts to contemporary events
D. It has no significant changes compared to earlier MARC versions

Answer: C. It addresses issues beyond national preferences and adapts to contemporary events

Explanation: MARC 21 differs from its predecessors by addressing issues beyond national preferences and adapting to contemporary events, reflecting a shift from geographic to temporal considerations.

32. What does MARC 21 encompass?

A. Only printed documents
B. Only digital documents
C. All media of documents
D. Only historical records

Answer: C. All media of documents

Explanation: MARC 21 embraces all media of documents in its scheme, reflecting its comprehensive approach to cataloguing various types of materials.

33. When did the Library first publish a document with USMARC in its title?

A. 1970
B. 1980
C. 1990
D. 2000

Answer: C. 1990

Explanation: The first document published with USMARC in its title appeared in 1990.

34. What is the purpose of MARC 21 according to its variant name?

A. To address challenges specific to the 20th century
B. To meet the challenges of the 21st century
C. To simplify the cataloguing of historical records
D. To focus solely on magnetic tape records

Answer: B. To meet the challenges of the 21st century

Explanation: MARC 21 aims to meet the challenges of the 21st century, as indicated by its variant name.

35. What does the MARC Program for Cooperative Cataloguing (PCC) emphasize?

A. Uniform cataloguing practices worldwide
B. Greater flexibility in tailoring local cataloguing practices to local needs
C. Restricting local cataloguing to global standards
D. Eliminating local cataloguing practices

Answer: B. Greater flexibility in tailoring local cataloguing practices to local needs

Explanation: The MARC Program for Cooperative Cataloguing (PCC) emphasizes greater flexibility in tailoring local cataloguing practices to local needs while maintaining relative standards.

36. How many separate formats are defined for managing bibliographic data in a networking environment?

A. Three
B. Four
C. Five
D. Six

Answer: C. Five

Explanation: Five separate formats are defined for managing bibliographic data in a networking environment, including bibliographic, holdings, authority, classification, and community information.

37. How are cataloguing data elements transmitted in an electronic file?

A. Using random text files
B. As per ISO 2709 specifications for bibliographic information interchange
C. In a manually coded format
D. Through graphical user interfaces

Answer: B. As per ISO 2709 specifications for bibliographic information interchange

Explanation: Cataloguing data elements are transmitted as contents in an electronic file designed according to ISO 2709 specifications for bibliographic information interchange.

38. What is the purpose of the special character used in the file for bibliographic data?

A. To encode the bibliographic content
B. To separate records in the file
C. To format the text content
D. To identify the file type

Answer: B. To separate records in the file

Explanation: The special character is used to separate records in the file, making it easier for the computer to distinguish between different records.

39. What are the three sections of data in each physical record as specified in ISO 2709 standard?

A. Header, Body, Footer
B. Index, Content, Metadata
C. Leader or Record Label, Directory, Data Content
D. Title, Author, Subject

Answer: C. Leader or Record Label, Directory, Data Content

Explanation: Each physical record comprises the Leader or Record Label, Directory, and Data Content sections.

40. What does the Leader section in a MARC record consist of?

A. A string of 24 characters including coded information about the record's organization and features
B. A summary of the bibliographic content
C. A detailed description of the record's author
D. A list of all data fields

Answer: A. A string of 24 characters including coded information about the record's organization and features

Explanation: The Leader section consists of a string of 24 characters that includes coded information about the record's organization and features.

41. What is the role of the Directory in a MARC record?

A. To store bibliographic information
B. To serve as a roadmap of the Data Contents area
C. To list all authors and titles
D. To encode the bibliographic data

Answer: B. To serve as a roadmap of the Data Contents area

Explanation: The Directory acts as a roadmap for locating various fields of data elements within the Data Contents section.

42. What information does the Directory provide about data elements?

A. Only the total number of records
B. A unique address comprising 12 numeric characters made of Field Tag, position, and field length
C. A detailed summary of each record
D. The historical context of the bibliographic content

Answer: B. A unique address comprising 12 numeric characters made of Field Tag, position, and field length

Explanation: The Directory provides a unique address for each data element, made up of a Field Tag, position, and field length.

43. What role do Subfield Delimiters play in data content control?

A. They organize the data into columns
B. They alert computer programs to interpret the following character as a data identifier code rather than part of the text
C. They encrypt the text data for security
D. They separate individual records in the file

Answer: B. They alert computer programs to interpret the following character as a data identifier code rather than part of the text

Explanation: Subfield Delimiters, such as '$', signal the computer to treat the following character as a data identifier code, not part of the text, allowing the computer to correctly interpret and manipulate the data.

44. How does a computer continue to read a text string with Subfield Delimiters?

A. Until it encounters a new Subfield Delimiter or a Field Delimiter
B. Until the end of the text file
C. Until it reaches the maximum length of the text
D. Until the computer runs out of memory

Answer: A. Until it encounters a new Subfield Delimiter or a Field Delimiter

Explanation: The computer reads the text string as a subfield until it encounters another Subfield Delimiter or a Field Delimiter.

45. What is a Subfield Code composed of?

A. Only a Data Element Identifier
B. Only a Subfield Delimiter
C. A Subfield Delimiter and a Data Element Identifier
D. A Field Delimiter and a Subfield Identifier

Answer: C. A Subfield Delimiter and a Data Element Identifier

Explanation: A Subfield Code is composed of both a Subfield Delimiter and a Data Element Identifier.

46. What is the function of a Data Element Identifier in a Subfield Code?

A. It marks the end of the text string
B. It is a code that plays a crucial role in analyzing bibliographic data content
C. It organizes the data into hierarchical levels
D. It encrypts the data for secure transmission

Answer: B. It is a code that plays a crucial role in analyzing bibliographic data content

Explanation: The Data Element Identifier is crucial for analyzing bibliographic data content, as it helps in identifying and processing data elements separately.

47. What is the primary role of Subfield Codes?

A. To encrypt the data
B. To identify data elements within a field for separate manipulation by the computer
C. To create hierarchical data structures
D. To limit the length of text fields

Answer: B. To identify data elements within a field for separate manipulation by the computer

Explanation: Subfield Codes are used to identify data elements within a field, allowing the computer to manipulate each element separately.

48. What are the core metadata tools developed specifically for online cataloguing?

A. Dublin Core and MODS
B. AACR/RDA and MARC
C. XML and SGML
D. ISBD and FRBR

Answer: B. AACR/RDA and MARC

Explanation: The core metadata tools specifically developed for online cataloguing include AACR/RDA and MARC.

49. Which typology of metadata includes Dublin Core, MODS, and VRA?

A. Data Structure
B. Data Content
C. Data Value
D. Data Format

Answer: A. Data Structure

Explanation: Dublin Core, MODS, and VRA fall under the typology of Data Structure.

50. Which metadata standard focuses on data content and includes AACR2, RDA, and FRBR?

A. Data Structure
B. Data Content
C. Data Value
D. Data Format

Answer: B. Data Content

Explanation: AACR2, RDA, and FRBR are standards related to Data Content.

51. What is the primary function of metadata standards like XML and SGML?

A. To describe data structure
B. To format data
C. To present data
D. To provide data values

Answer: B. To format data

Explanation: XML and SGML are used primarily to format data.

52. Which metadata standards are associated with Data Presentation?

A. LCSH and AAT
B. ISBD and CSS/XSLT
C. MARC and XML
D. Dublin Core and MODS

Answer: B. ISBD and CSS/XSLT

Explanation: ISBD and CSS/XSLT are associated with Data Presentation.

More information: Cataloguing Metadata Tools the Metadata tools for cataloguing networked resources are too many and many of them are dependent on the nature and type of resources. Typology of Metadata can be mapped in the following way:

λ Data Structure: Dublin Core, MODS, CDWA, VRA, LOM

λ Data Content: AACR2, RDA, FRBR, CCO, CDPDCMBP

λ Data Value: LCSH, AAT, TGN, LCTGM, ULAN, W3CDTF

λ Data Format: XML, SGML, MARC

λ Data Presentation: ISBD, CSS and/or XSLT

Here we briefly introduce the core sets of Metadata developed particularly for online cataloguing, namely AACR/RDA, and MARC, and two more related standards, namely, ISBD and FRBR

53. When was the unified second edition of AACR, consistent with ISBD specifications, published?

A. 1967
B. 1978
C. 1997
D. 2005

Answer: B. 1978

Explanation: The unified second edition of AACR, consistent with ISBD specifications, was published in 1978.

54. What significant development occurred in the AACR timeline in 1997?

A. Publication of the first edition
B. Toronto conference on AACR2
C. Development of RDA
D. Introduction of FRBR

Answer: B. Toronto conference on AACR2

Explanation: The major breakthrough in the AACR timeline occurred during the Toronto conference on AACR2 in 1997.

55. What was introduced in 2005 as part of the AACR timeline?

A. ISBD
B. FRBR
C. RDA
D. MARC 21

Answer: C. RDA

Explanation: Resource Description and Access (RDA) was developed in 2005.

56. In which decade did the Library of Congress design the MAchine-Readable Cataloguing (MARC) format?

A. 1950s
B. 1960s
C. 1970s
D. 1980s

Answer: B. 1960s

Explanation: The Library of Congress designed the MARC format in the 1960s.

57. What major development occurred in the MARC timeline in 1997?

A. Introduction of MARC 21
B. Expansion of USMARC to a family of formats

C. USMARC and CANMARC became MARC 21
D. Development of UNIMARC

Answer: C. USMARC and CANMARC became MARC 21

Explanation: In 1997, USMARC and CANMARC were unified into MARC 21.

58. What significant change in MARC occurred between 2006 and 2007?

A. Introduction of MARC 21
B. Enhancement by German proposals
C. Development of UNIMARC
D. Adoption of MARC 21 by the British Library

Answer: B. Enhancement by German proposals

Explanation: MARC 21 was enhanced by German proposals between 2006 and 2007 to facilitate the transition from MAB to MARC21.

59. What is the International Standard Bibliographic Description (ISBD)?

A. A cataloguing code
B. A set of rules for bibliographic description
C. A type of cataloguing software
D. A cataloguing format

Answer: B. A set of rules for bibliographic description

Explanation: The International Standard Bibliographic Description (ISBD) is a set of rules for bibliographic description developed by IFLA.

60. In what year did the International Standard Bibliographic Descriptions (ISBD) start being developed by IFLA?

A. 1959
B. 1969
C. 1979
D. 1989

Answer: B. 1969

Explanation: ISBD was developed by IFLA starting in 1969.

61. How many areas of description are defined by ISBD?

A. Five
B. Six
C. Seven
D. Eight

Answer: C. Seven

Explanation: ISBD defines seven areas of description.

62. Which of the following is NOT one of the seven areas of description defined by ISBD?

A. Title
B. Statement of Responsibility
C. Language of Content
D. Physical Description

Answer: C. Language of Content

Explanation: The seven areas of description defined by ISBD do not include "Language of Content." They are Title, Statement of Responsibility, Edition, Resource-specific Information, Publication Details, Physical Description, and Series Information.

63. What does ISBD use to separate different areas of description?

A. Color coding
B. Punctuation
C. Italicization
D. Numeric codes

Answer: B. Punctuation

Explanation: ISBD uses punctuation to separate different areas of description.

64. When was the Functional Requirements of Bibliographic Records (FRBR) prepared by IFLA?

A. 1995
B. 1998
C. 2001
D. 2004

Answer: B. 1998

Explanation: FRBR was prepared by IFLA in 1998.

65. Between which years did the IFLA Study Group on Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records develop the entity relationship model?

A. 1987 to 1990
B. 1992 to 1995
C. 1995 to 1998
D. 2000 to 2003

Answer: B. 1992 to 1995

Explanation: The IFLA Study Group developed the entity relationship model from 1992 to 1995.

66. What are the tasks defined by the FRBR entity-relationship model?

A. Find, identify, select, obtain
B. Create, analyze, process, deliver
C. Catalog, organize, digitize, store
D. Search, sort, retrieve, evaluate

Answer: A. Find, identify, select, obtain

Explanation: The FRBR entity-relationship model defines the tasks as find, identify, select, and obtain.

67. Which of the following is NOT one of the resource relationships defined by FRBR?

A. Work
B. Expression
C. Item
D. Collection

Answer: D. Collection

Explanation: FRBR defines resource relationships as work, expression, manifestation, and item, but not collection.

68. According to FRBR, what types of entities are included in the model?

A. People, corporate bodies, concepts, objects, events, places
B. Books, articles, journals, databases
C. Authors, publishers, librarians, readers
D. Digital formats, print formats, multimedia formats

Answer: A. People, corporate bodies, concepts, objects, events, places

Explanation: FRBR includes entities such as people, corporate bodies (agents), concepts, objects, events, and places.

69. What does the acronym OPAC stand for?

A. Online Public Access Catalogue
B. Offline Public Access Catalogue
C. Online Personal Access Catalogue
D. Offline Personal Access Catalogue

Answer: A. Online Public Access Catalogue

Explanation: OPAC stands for Online Public Access Catalogue, which refers to computer terminals that provide a user-friendly interface for accessing cataloguing data.

70. Which product allows users to search and retrieve metadata from over 1900 pre-defined databases globally?

A. FRBR Display Tool
B. MARCView™
C. BookWhere
D. MarciveWeb SELECT

Answer: C. BookWhere

Explanation: WebClarity Software Inc.'s BookWhere product allows users to search and retrieve metadata from over 1900 databases.

71. What is the purpose of the FRBR Display Tool?

A. To view MARC records in a user-friendly format
B. To sort bibliographic data into FRBR categories
C. To search for bibliographic records across multiple databases
D. To provide customized MARC 21 bibliographic records

Answer: B. To sort bibliographic data into FRBR categories

Explanation: The FRBR Display Tool sorts bibliographic data into hierarchical displays by

grouping data using the FRBR concepts of "Works," "Expressions," and "Manifestations."

72. Which tool allows for easy viewing, searching, and printing of MARC 21, USMARC, CanMARC, UNIMARC, or MARCXML bibliographic or authority files?

A. MARCView™
B. BookWhere
C. MarciveWeb SELECT
D. FRBR Display Tool

Answer: A. MARCView™

Explanation: MARCView™ is designed to view, search, and print MARC bibliographic or authority files with ease.

73. What does MarciveWeb SELECT enable librarians to do?

A. Search and retrieve metadata from global databases
B. Sort MARC records into FRBR categories
C. Search records from LC, NLM, NLC, GPO, and other sources and obtain customized MARC 21 records
D. View and print MARC records in a user-friendly format

Answer: C. Search records from LC, NLM, NLC, GPO, and other sources and obtain customized MARC 21 records

Explanation: MarciveWeb SELECT allows librarians to search records from various sources and obtain customized MARC 21 bibliographic records and other related items.

74. What is the primary function of Impact/ONLINE CAT?

A. To provide a MARC editor with built-in validation
B. To search multiple databases of MARC 21 records
C. To download records to a local hard drive
D. To create and edit bibliographic and authority records

Answer: B. To search multiple databases of MARC 21 records

Explanation: Impact/ONLINE CAT is a cataloguing system that allows users to search multiple databases of MARC 21 bibliographic, authority, and community information records.

75. What does Connexion offer libraries?

A. A free Z39.50 copy cataloguing tool
B. A robust suite of full-service online cataloguing tools
C. A MARC editor with built-in validation
D. A format converter for MARC records

Answer: B. A robust suite of full-service online cataloguing tools

Explanation: Connexion provides a comprehensive suite of online cataloguing tools and services, allowing libraries to create, edit, and share bibliographic and authority records.

76. What is the purpose of OCLC-MARC Record Delivery?

A. To download records from WorldCat to your local system
B. To create and edit MARC records
C. To search multiple libraries simultaneously
D. To generate MARC records in OCLC-MARC format

Answer: A. To download records from WorldCat to your local system

Explanation: OCLC-MARC Record Delivery provides a way to import bibliographic records from WorldCat to your local system to keep local holdings in sync with WorldCat.

77. What feature does Surpass Copycat offer for cataloguing?

A. MARC record generation
B. Z39.50 copy cataloguing tool
C. MARC record conversion
D. Record editing in batch mode

Answer: B. Z39.50 copy cataloguing tool

Explanation: Surpass Copycat is a Z39.50 copy cataloguing tool that allows users to find and download MARC records from multiple libraries.

78. How does WorldCat Cataloguing Partners benefit libraries?

A. By providing MARC record editing tools
B. By delivering OCLC MARC records with materials ordered from vendors
C. By converting MARC records to different character sets
D. By summarizing the structure of MARC files

Answer: B. By delivering OCLC MARC records with materials ordered from vendors

Explanation: WorldCat Cataloguing Partners facilitate the delivery of OCLC MARC records with materials ordered from participating vendors and automatically update the library's holdings in WorldCat.

79. What is the purpose of MARC RTP?

A. To convert MARC records to another character set
B. To read and convert MARC records to user-designed formats
C. To create MARC records from preformatted text
D. To enable MARC record editing in batch mode

Answer: B. To read and convert MARC records to user-designed formats

Explanation: MARC RTP reads MARC bibliographic records and converts them to formats designed by the user, also producing human-readable listings or summaries.

80. Which tool handles special problems in converting records into or out of MARC formats?

A. MARCMaker
B. MARC RTP
C. MARConvert™
D. USEMARCON Plus

Answer: C. MARConvert™

Explanation: MARConvert™ handles unusual requirements or problems in converting records to or from MARC formats and character sets.

81. What does MARCMaker do?

A. Converts MARC records between national formats
B. Generates MARC record structures from preformatted text
C. Searches for MARC records across multiple databases
D. Provides a user-friendly interface for MARC record management

Answer: B. Generates MARC record structures from preformatted text

Explanation: MARCMaker generates MARC record structures from preformatted text and runs under various Windows versions.

82. What is USEMARCON Plus used for?

A. Converting MARC records between national formats
B. Viewing and printing MARC records
C. Downloading MARC records from online databases
D. Editing MARC records in batch mode

Answer: A. Converting MARC records between national formats

Explanation: USEMARCON Plus enables libraries to create rules-based systems for converting records between different national MARC formats and modifying rules files for specific local requirements.

83. What is the main function of CILLA?

A. To provide quarterly book lists for specific languages
B. To offer a cataloguing calculator
C. To check URL links in MARC 21 records
D. To locate spelling errors in bibliographic databases

Answer: A. To provide quarterly book lists for specific languages

Explanation: CILLA provides quarterly book lists for materials in Bengali, Gujarati, Hindi, Panjabi, Tamil, and Urdu, aiding library authorities in purchasing and cataloguing.

84. What does the Cataloguing Calculator do?

A. Finds variable and fixed MARC fields
B. Checks URL links in MARC 21 records
C. Locates spelling errors in bibliographic databases
D. Generates MARC records from preformatted text

Answer: A. Finds variable and fixed MARC fields

Explanation: The Cataloguing Calculator helps find variable and fixed MARC fields, language codes, geographic area codes, and other cataloguing data.

85. What is the primary purpose of InfoWorks Link Checker?

A. To locate spelling errors in bibliographic databases
B. To check URL links in MARC 21 records
C. To calculate MARC field values
D. To provide quarterly book lists for multiple languages

Answer: B. To check URL links in MARC 21 records

Explanation: InfoWorks Link Checker is designed to verify URL links in MARC 21 records and can check multiple links simultaneously.

86. How does InfoWorks Spelling Checker for Database Maintenance assist librarians?

A. By providing a cataloguing calculator
B. By checking URL links in MARC 21 records
C. By locating spelling errors and cleaning up bibliographic databases
D. By generating MARC records from preformatted text

Answer: C. By locating spelling errors and cleaning up bibliographic databases

Explanation: InfoWorks Spelling Checker helps find and correct spelling errors in bibliographic databases, with options for batch and interactive checking and custom dictionaries.

1. What is a web index?

A. A searchable database of webpages
B. A browsable list of terms or sections leading to further resources
C. A list of keywords used in HTML documents
D. A tool for automatically extracting data from web pages

Answer: B. A browsable list of terms or sections leading to further resources

Explanation: A web index is a browsable list of entries or terms that guide users towards additional resources or information on a topic.

2. How is traditional indexing different from web indexing?

A. Traditional indexing uses automated tools, while web indexing is manual
B. Traditional indexing is done by computers, while web indexing is done by individuals
C. Traditional indexing is best done manually by skilled individuals, while web indexing can be automated
D. Traditional indexing uses meta-tags, while web indexing does not

Answer: C. Traditional indexing is best done manually by skilled individuals, while web indexing can be automated

Explanation: Traditional indexing is often best performed manually by individuals with indexing expertise, while web indexing can be automated using tools like spiders or crawlers.

3. What is the role of a spider or crawler in web indexing?

A. To manually create index entries for web documents
B. To extract search terms from webpages and store them in a local database
C. To display the web index to users
D. To provide a browsable list of index entries

Answer: B. To extract search terms from webpages and store them in a local database

Explanation: Spiders or crawlers extract search terms from webpages and store them in a search engine's database, which is then used for search indexing.

4. What does a website A-Z index resemble?

A. An alphabetical back-of-the-book style index
B. A list of meta-tag keywords
C. A detailed description of webpage contents
D. A systematic arrangement of entries in a web document

Answer: A. An alphabetical back-of-the-book style index

Explanation: A website A-Z index resembles an alphabetical back-of-the-book index where entries are hyperlinked to relevant web pages or sections.

5. According to the British Indexing Standard (BS3700:1988), what is a web index?

A. A collection of meta-tag keywords
B. A systematic arrangement of entries designed to locate information
C. A program for extracting data from web pages
D. A tool for creating searchable databases of webpages

Answer: B. A systematic arrangement of entries designed to locate information

Explanation: The British Indexing Standard defines a web index as a systematic arrangement of entries meant to help users locate information in a document.

6. What is meta-tag keyword indexing?

A. Using meta-tags to describe a webpage's content and keywords
B. Creating a browsable list of terms on a website
C. A process of manually indexing web documents
D. Using robots to extract data from web pages

Answer: A. Using meta-tags to describe a webpage's content and keywords

Explanation: Meta-tag keyword indexing involves using meta-tags in HTML documents to describe a

webpage's content and keywords for search engine optimization.

7. What is a robot in the context of search engines?

A. A tool for manually indexing web content
B. A program used to extract data from web pages for search indexing
C. A list of meta-tag keywords
D. A browsable list of web index entries

Answer: B. A program used to extract data from web pages for search indexing

Explanation: A robot, also known as a crawler or spider, is a program used by search engines to extract and index data from web pages.

8. Which search engine uses the robot named Googlebot?

A. Yahoo
B. Bing
C. Google
D. MSN

Answer: C. Google

Explanation: Google uses the robot named Googlebot for indexing and retrieving data from web pages.

Table 14.1: Robots used by Search Engines

Search engine	Robot
Google	Googlebot
Yahoo	Slurp
MSN	MSNbot

Source: IGNOU BLIS book

9. What does the term "ranking" refer to in search engine results?

A. The order in which search results are displayed
B. The number of keywords used in a webpage
C. The visibility of a webpage in social media
D. The design and layout of a website

Answer: A. The order in which search results are displayed

Explanation: Ranking refers to the order in which search engine results are displayed, with higher-ranked results appearing first.

10. What is the purpose of Search Engine Optimization (SEO)?

A. To increase the number of web pages on a website
B. To improve the visibility and ranking of a website in search engine results
C. To design a website's graphical interface
D. To manually index web documents

Answer: B. To improve the visibility and ranking of a website in search engine results

Explanation: SEO aims to improve a website's visibility and ranking in search engine results by optimizing the use of relevant search terms.

11. What characterizes White Hat SEO?

A. Use of unethical techniques to improve search rankings
B. Following search engine guidelines to enhance visibility and ranking
C. Heavy use of keywords to manipulate search results
D. Presenting different content to search engines and human users

Answer: B. Following search engine guidelines to enhance visibility and ranking

Explanation: White Hat SEO involves following search engine guidelines to improve a website's visibility and ranking in an ethical manner.

12. What is "Spamdexing" in the context of Black Hat SEO?

A. Using ethical methods to increase search engine visibility
B. Filling a webpage with excessive keywords to manipulate search rankings
C. Creating a different webpage for search engines and human users
D. Following search engine guidelines for better ranking

Answer: B. Filling a webpage with excessive keywords to manipulate search rankings

Explanation: Spamdexing involves using excessive keywords in a webpage to manipulate search engine rankings, often using methods that are not visible to human users.

13. What does "cloaking" refer to in Black Hat SEO?

A. Using multiple keywords to improve ranking
B. Presenting different content to search engines and human users
C. Adhering to search engine guidelines
D. Improving website accessibility through ethical means

Answer: B. Presenting different content to search engines and human users

Explanation: Cloaking refers to the practice of showing different content to search engines than what is shown to human users, aiming to deceive search engines.

14. What is the consequence of using unethical SEO practices like Black Hat SEO?

A. Improved search engine rankings and visibility
B. Increased website traffic and user engagement
C. Potential banning of the website from search engine results
D. Better compliance with search engine guidelines

Answer: C. Potential banning of the website from search engine results

Explanation: Unethical SEO practices can lead to a website being banned from search engine results as search engines detect and penalize such methods.

15. What does a thesaurus in information science typically demonstrate?

A. A set of metadata elements
B. The relationship of terms with respect to Broader Terms (BTs), Narrower Terms (NTs), Related Terms (RTs), and Synonymous Terms (SNs)
C. A list of document titles
D. A classification of technical file types

Answer: B. The relationship of terms with respect to Broader Terms (BTs), Narrower Terms (NTs), Related Terms (RTs), and Synonymous Terms (SNs)

Explanation: A thesaurus shows the relationships between terms, including Broader Terms, Narrower Terms, Related Terms, and Synonymous Terms, helping in more precise retrieval and organization of information.

16. What is the most commonly used metadata schema over the Internet?

A. MARC
B. XML
C. Dublin Core Metadata Initiative (DCMI)
D. ISBD

Answer: C. Dublin Core Metadata Initiative (DCMI)

Explanation: The Dublin Core Metadata Initiative (DCMI) is the most commonly used metadata schema for describing various characteristics of objects or documents on the Internet.

17. Which type of metadata includes information about the ordering, acquisition, and licensing of a document?

A. Technical metadata
B. Descriptive metadata
C. Administrative metadata
D. Structural metadata

Answer: C. Administrative metadata

Explanation: Administrative metadata includes information related to the lifecycle of a document, such as ordering, acquisition, maintenance, licensing, rights, ownership, and provenance.

18. What does technical metadata store information about?

A. The document's title and author
B. The file type, content type, and how the file should be rendered

C. The file's internal structure and sections
D. The document's usage and rights

Answer: B. The file type, content type, and how the file should be rendered

Explanation: Technical metadata contains information about the file type, content type, and how the file should be read or rendered, which is crucial for file playback and digital preservation.

19. What is the role of structural metadata?

A. To describe the various characteristics of an object or document
B. To store information about the file type and size
C. To explain different components and their roles within a document
D. To provide a list of keywords for search optimization

Answer: C. To explain different components and their roles within a document

Explanation: Structural metadata details the different components of a document and their roles, managing sections and sub-sections and their relationships.

20. What is the purpose of preservation metadata?

A. To describe the content of a digital object
B. To increase the longevity of digital documents and protect them from deterioration
C. To list the keywords for search engine optimization
D. To manage the structure and sections of a document

Answer: B. To increase the longevity of digital documents and protect them from deterioration

Explanation: Preservation metadata is used to enhance the longevity of digital documents by documenting preservation conditions and maintaining the original features of the digital object.

21. Which standard metadata set is used for digital preservation purposes?

A. Dublin Core
B. MARC
C. PREMIS
D. ISBD

Answer: C. PREMIS

Explanation: PREMIS (Preservation Metadata: Implementation Strategies) is the standard metadata set used specifically for digital preservation, developed by OCLC and RLG to manage and implement preservation metadata.

22. What is the primary focus of PREMIS?

A. Descriptive metadata
B. Administrative metadata
C. Preservation metadata
D. Structural metadata

Answer: C. Preservation metadata

Explanation: PREMIS focuses on preservation metadata, which includes information about the preservation conditions and original features of digital objects.

23. What does ontology study?

A. The relationships between metadata elements
B. The existence of entities and their relationships in a conceptual framework
C. The structure of digital documents
D. The preservation methods for digital objects

Answer: B. The existence of entities and their relationships in a conceptual framework

Explanation: Ontology is a branch of metaphysics that studies the existence of entities and their relationships, often depicted in terms of hierarchy and subdivisions based on similarities or attributes.

24. What is the origin of the term 'ontology'?

A. Latin
B. Greek
C. French
D. German

Answer: B. Greek

Explanation: The term 'ontology' is derived from the Greek words 'Onto' (being) and 'Logia' (written or spoken discourse), referring to the study of existence and relationships.

25. What are the three levels of a Task Oriented Ontology?

A. Lexical, Conceptual, Symbol
B. Lexical, Functional, Operational
C. Conceptual, Symbolic, Operational
D. Lexical, Structural, Functional

Answer: A. Lexical, Conceptual, Symbol

Explanation: A Task Oriented Ontology consists of three levels: Lexical, Conceptual, and Symbol, each with distinct objectives and roles in the ontology.

26. What is the purpose of the Lexical level in a Task Oriented Ontology?

A. To provide human-friendly understanding and description of tasks
B. To simulate problem-solving processes and demonstrate solutions
C. To translate task descriptions into instructions for system execution
D. To implement operational rules and constraints

Answer: A. To provide human-friendly understanding and description of tasks

Explanation: The Lexical level of a Task Oriented Ontology focuses on providing a human-friendly understanding of tasks, allowing users to describe tasks in a comprehensible manner.

27. What is the focus of the Conceptual level in a Task Oriented Ontology?

A. Operational instructions for system execution
B. Human-readable task descriptions
C. Problem-solving processes and demonstration of solutions
D. Translation of tasks into executable instructions

Answer: C. Problem-solving processes and demonstration of solutions

Explanation: The Conceptual level simulates problem-solving processes and demonstrates possible solutions through rules or reasoning, without focusing on execution.

28. What does the Symbol level of a Task Oriented Ontology provide?

A. Rules for reasoning and constraints among concepts
B. Human-readable descriptions and comprehension of tasks
C. Operationality at the implementation or execution level by translating descriptions into instructions
D. Problem-solving simulation and conceptual solutions

Answer: C. Operationality at the implementation or execution level by translating descriptions into instructions

Explanation: The Symbol level provides operational functionality at the implementation or execution level by translating task descriptions into executable instructions.

29. What is the primary purpose of interoperability in libraries?

A. To create a single platform for multiple libraries
B. To exchange bibliographic data among libraries
C. To adhere to a single bibliographic standard
D. To enhance email and phone communication

Answer: B. To exchange bibliographic data among libraries

Explanation: Interoperability in libraries allows for the exchange of bibliographic data among different libraries, enabling shared access and usability of library catalogs.

30. How does interoperability benefit the telephone and email industries?

A. By adhering to specific proprietary standards
B. By providing a single standard for communication across different service providers
C. By restricting communication to specific

service providers
D. By limiting the exchange of data to within a single network

Answer: B. By providing a single standard for communication across different service providers

Explanation: Interoperability in the telephone and email industries is achieved by adhering to common standards like the telephone standard or Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP), allowing seamless communication across different service providers.

31. What is the core function of the Z39.50 protocol?

A. Searching deep web databases
B. Real-time information retrieval from sources
C. Managing library catalog data
D. Interoperable searching of OPACs and databases

Answer: D. Interoperable searching of OPACs and databases

Explanation: The Z39.50 protocol is used for interoperable searching of Online Public Access Catalogues (OPACs) and various other databases.

32. What is the primary challenge in using the Z39.50 protocol?

A. Ensuring real-time data retrieval
B. Mapping different standards
C. Managing server availability
D. Encapsulating requests in XML format

Answer: B. Mapping different standards

Explanation: A primary challenge with the Z39.50 protocol is the mapping of different standards, which can complicate its use.

33. What are the three protocols encapsulated in ZiNG?

A. Z39.50, SRW, and SRU
B. OAI-PMH, Z39.50, and SOAP
C. SRW, SRU, and CQL
D. HTTP, XML, and SOAP

Answer: A. Z39.50, SRW, and SRU

Explanation: ZiNG (Z39.50-International: Next Generation) encapsulates Z39.50, Search and Retrieve Web Service (SRW), and Search and Retrieve URL Service (SRU).

34. How does the SRU protocol differ from SRW?

A. SRU returns results in JSON format, while SRW returns XML
B. SRU uses HTTP GET method, while SRW uses SOAP
C. SRW is a part of ZiNG, while SRU is not
D. SRU supports Dublin Core elements, while SRW does not

Answer: B. SRU uses HTTP GET method, while SRW uses SOAP

Explanation: SRU (Search and Retrieve URL Service) uses HTTP GET method, while SRW (Search and Retrieve Web Service) uses SOAP (Simple Object Access Protocol).

35. What does the OAI-PMH protocol do?

A. Harvests metadata from distributed resources for searching
B. Maps different standards for interoperability
C. Provides real-time search results
D. Encapsulates requests in SOAP

Answer: A. Harvests metadata from distributed resources for searching

Explanation: OAI-PMH (Open Archive Initiative Protocol for Metadata Harvesting) is used to harvest metadata from various resources to enable searching across digital repositories.

36. How does the OAI-PMH protocol handle searches for unavailable resources?

A. It returns metadata only
B. It directs the request to the resource or repository
C. It performs searches based on harvested metadata
D. It uses SOAP to manage search requests

Answer: B. It directs the request to the resource or repository

Explanation: OAI-PMH directs requests for documents to the actual resources or repositories, even if they are not immediately available.

37. Which digital library harvester provides over 15 million records from 944 repositories?

A. OAIster
B. Search Digital Libraries (SDL)
C. DP9
D. Library of Congress

Answer: A. OAIster

Explanation: OAIster, hosted by the University of Michigan, provides a large number of records from numerous repositories.

38. What is the primary focus of the Search Digital Libraries (SDL) service in India?

A. Harvesting metadata from global repositories
B. Providing search capabilities for local digital libraries
C. Managing records from OAI-PMH repositories
D. Offering a unified search platform for international libraries

Answer: B. Providing search capabilities for local digital libraries

Explanation: Search Digital Libraries (SDL) focuses on providing search capabilities for local digital libraries and repositories in India.

39. What does the OAI-PMH protocol primarily facilitate?

A. Real-time information retrieval
B. Metadata extraction and searching across digital repositories
C. Real-time updates of digital documents
D. Standardization of metadata formats

Answer: B. Metadata extraction and searching across digital repositories

Explanation: The OAI-PMH protocol is used for extracting metadata from various resources and enabling searches across digital repositories.

40. How does the OAI-PMH protocol handle requests for unavailable resources?

A. It returns a placeholder message
B. It directs the request to the original resource or repository
C. It performs searches using harvested metadata only
D. It provides search results from local databases only

Answer: B. It directs the request to the original resource or repository

Explanation: OAI-PMH directs requests for documents to the original resource or repository, even if the resource is not currently available.

41. In what format does OAI-PMH typically return search results?

A. JSON
B. HTML
C. XML
D. CSV

Answer: C. XML

Explanation: OAI-PMH returns search results in XML format.

42. Which of the following harvester provides over 15 million records from 944 repositories?

A. Search Digital Libraries (SDL)
B. DP9
C. OAIster
D. Library of Congress

Answer: C. OAIster

Explanation: OAIster, managed by the University of Michigan, provides a large number of records from numerous repositories.

43. What is the focus of the Search Digital Libraries (SDL) service in India?

A. Harvesting metadata from global repositories
B. Providing search capabilities from local repositories
C. Offering metadata services for international libraries

D. Integrating OAI-PMH with other search engines

Answer: B. Providing search capabilities from local repositories

Explanation: Search Digital Libraries (SDL) focuses on providing search capabilities for local digital libraries and repositories in India.

44. Which harvester at Old Dominion University helps search engines harvest records from OAI-PMH repositories?

A. OAIster
B. DP9
C. SDL
D. PREMIS

Answer: B. DP9

Explanation: DP9 at Old Dominion University enables search engines to harvest records from OAI-PMH repositories.